ISBN: 978-81-989981-7-0

Progressive Trends in Pharmaceutical, Chemical and Biological Sciences
Volume III

Editors:
Dr. Varunsingh Saggu
Dr. Venugopal T. M
Dr. Swaminath L. Bhattar
Dr. N. Rajkumar

Bhumi Publishing, India
Bhumi Publishing
First Edition: July 2025

Progressive Trends in Pharmaceutical, Chemical and Biological Sciences

Volume III

(ISBN: 978-81-989981-7-0)

Editors

Dr. Varunsingh Saggu Department of Pharmacy, Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat	**Dr. Venugopal T. M** Department of Microbiology, Sahyadri Science College, Shivamogga, Karnataka
Dr. Swaminath L. Bhattar Department of Chemistry, Gogate Jogalekar College, Ratnagiri (Autonomous), Maharashtra	**Dr. N. Rajkumar** Department of Zoology, Government Degree College, Badangpet, Ranga Reddy District, Telangana

Bhumi Publishing

July 2025

Title: Progressive Trends in Pharmaceutical, Chemical and Biological Sciences Volume III

Editors: Dr. Varunsingh Saggu, Dr. Venugopal T. M,

Dr. Swaminath L. Bhattar, Dr. N. Rajkumar

First Edition: July 2025

ISBN: 978-81-989981-7-0

Published by:

Bhumi Publishing

BHUMI PUBLISHING

Nigave Khalasa, Tal – Karveer, Dist – Kolhapur, Maharashtra, INDIA 416 207

E-mail: bhumipublishing@gmail.com

PREFACE

We are delighted to present this book titled Progressive Trends in Pharmaceutical, Chemical and Biological Sciences, an edited volume that brings together emerging perspectives, innovative research, and recent advancements across these interconnected disciplines. The rapid pace of scientific progress in pharmaceutical, chemical, and biological sciences has led to significant breakthroughs impacting human health, environment, and industrial applications. This compilation aims to provide a comprehensive platform for academicians, researchers, industry professionals, and students to understand current developments and future directions in these fields.

The chapters included in this book address a diverse range of topics, including novel drug delivery systems, synthesis and characterization of new chemical entities, green chemistry approaches, molecular biology techniques, biotechnological applications, and interdisciplinary research trends. Each contribution has been rigorously reviewed to maintain academic integrity and relevance. The authors have shared their expertise, experimental insights, and critical analyses to foster an integrated understanding of concepts and their practical implications.

This book is designed to inspire young researchers to undertake multidisciplinary studies that address global challenges such as sustainable development, environmental safety, drug discovery for unmet medical needs, and improvement of quality of life. It serves as a valuable reference for postgraduate students, research scholars, and faculty members seeking updated information and research methodologies in these fast-evolving domains.

We express our sincere gratitude to all the contributing authors for their timely submissions and scholarly efforts, and to the editorial board members and reviewers for their meticulous evaluation, constructive suggestions, and support throughout the publication process. We are thankful to the publisher for their encouragement and professional assistance in bringing this book to fruition.

We hope that Progressive Trends in Pharmaceutical, Chemical and Biological Sciences will motivate its readers to explore new ideas, initiate collaborative research, and contribute effectively towards scientific advancement. We welcome constructive feedback and suggestions for future editions to further enrich the academic value of this work.

- Editors

TABLE OF CONTENT

Progressive Trends in Pharmaceutical, Chemical and Biological Sciences Volume III
(ISBN: 978-81-989981-7-0)

SOLUBILITY ENHANCEMENT TECHNIQUES

Piyushkumar Sadhu
Department of Pharmaceutics, Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara – 391760
*Corresponding author E-mail: piyush.sadhu@yahoo.in

Abstract:
Poor aqueous solubility remains one of the most significant challenges in pharmaceutical drug development, with nearly 40–70% of new chemical entities (NCEs) classified as Biopharmaceutics Classification System (BCS) Class II or IV compounds. These poorly soluble drugs often exhibit low bioavailability, erratic absorption, and suboptimal therapeutic outcomes. Enhancing solubility is therefore crucial to ensure the efficacy and commercial viability of oral and parenteral drug products. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of the physicochemical basis of solubility and the factors influencing drug dissolution. It systematically explores various solubility enhancement strategies including physical modifications (particle size reduction, solid dispersions, and cryogenic techniques), chemical approaches (salt formation, pH modification, and prodrug design), and advanced formulation techniques such as inclusion complexes, self-emulsifying drug delivery systems (SEDDS), and nanonization. Additionally, modern technological interventions including hot-melt extrusion, supercritical fluid processing, and co-crystallization are discussed in detail with case studies and regulatory perspectives. The role of surfactants, cosolvents, and polymeric carriers in improving wettability and maintaining supersaturation is also elaborated. The chapter concludes by highlighting the significance of selecting appropriate enhancement techniques based on drug properties and intended route of administration. Future perspectives including the application of artificial intelligence and predictive modeling in solubility screening are briefly addressed. This chapter serves as a valuable guide for formulation scientists, researchers, and regulatory professionals working in pharmaceutical product development.

Keywords: Solubility Enhancement, Solid Dispersions, Nanonization, BCS Classification, Salt Formation, Inclusion Complexes, Hot-Melt Extrusion, Co-Crystals

Introduction:

Solubility is one of the most critical factors determining the success of drug development, particularly for orally and parenterally administered pharmaceuticals. A drug must be sufficiently soluble in physiological fluids to be absorbed into the systemic circulation, exert its pharmacological effect, and ultimately reach the therapeutic target. However, with the advancement of high-throughput screening and combinatorial chemistry, the discovery of new chemical entities (NCEs) has increasingly yielded compounds with high molecular weight, high lipophilicity, and poor aqueous solubility. These physicochemical properties pose significant

formulation and bioavailability challenges, making solubility enhancement a focal point in modern pharmaceutics. Solubility plays a foundational role in determining the bioavailability, efficacy, and manufacturability of a pharmaceutical compound. It governs the extent and rate at which a drug dissolves in biological fluids, which in turn dictates its absorption profile, particularly in oral delivery systems. An insufficiently soluble drug may fail to achieve therapeutic plasma concentrations, regardless of its pharmacodynamic potency. Moreover, solubility influences dosage form design, route of administration, excipient selection, and process scalability. Therefore, improving solubility not only enhances the therapeutic performance of poorly soluble drugs but also increases the likelihood of successful clinical translation and market approval [1].

Poorly soluble drugs often exhibit low and variable oral bioavailability, leading to subtherapeutic plasma levels, delayed onset of action, and reduced patient compliance. From a pharmacokinetic perspective, solubility directly affects the absorption phase, limiting the Cmax (maximum plasma concentration) and AUC (area under the curve), and potentially extending the Tmax (time to reach maximum concentration). Formulations with inadequate solubility may also demonstrate dose non-linearity, where increasing the dose does not proportionally increase drug exposure. Clinically, this can translate to reduced efficacy, increased dosing frequency, or the need for parenteral administration, all of which contribute to higher development costs and greater regulatory hurdles. Furthermore, variable absorption profiles may lead to inter-patient variability, increasing the risk of treatment failure or adverse effects. Therefore, addressing solubility issues early in the development process is essential to ensure pharmacokinetic reliability and therapeutic consistency [2].

Biopharmaceutical Classification System (BCS) and Solubility Challenges

The Biopharmaceutical Classification System (BCS), developed by the FDA and widely accepted by regulatory agencies, classifies drug substances based on their solubility and intestinal permeability into four categories:

- Class I: High solubility, high permeability
- Class II: Low solubility, high permeability
- Class III: High solubility, low permeability
- Class IV: Low solubility, low permeability

BCS Class II and IV compounds present the most formidable challenges during development, as poor solubility limits absorption, regardless of the drug's inherent biological activity. With nearly 40-70% of investigational drugs falling into these categories, solubility enhancement becomes a crucial requirement for formulation scientists. The classification also guides regulatory decisions, such as bioequivalence waivers, and helps in selecting appropriate solubility enhancement strategies [3].

Physicochemical Principles of Solubility

Understanding the physicochemical principles governing solubility is essential for the rational design and optimization of drug formulations. Solubility is a dynamic equilibrium process influenced by multiple molecular and environmental parameters. It reflects the ability of a solute (drug) to dissolve in a solvent (typically aqueous media for pharmaceuticals) and reach a stable concentration under specified conditions of temperature and pressure. This section explores the thermodynamic basis of solubility and the key physicochemical factors that influence drug solubilization and dissolution.

Thermodynamics of Solubilization

The solubilization process is governed by thermodynamic principles, primarily involving the change in Gibbs free energy (ΔG) during dissolution. For a drug to dissolve spontaneously in a solvent, ΔG must be negative, indicating a thermodynamically favorable process. A negative ΔG may result from either an exothermic enthalpy changes or an increase in entropy. For poorly soluble drugs, the strong intermolecular forces in the solid-state (e.g., crystal lattice energy) often create a high energy barrier for dissolution. Hence, disrupting this lattice (e.g., by forming amorphous systems or salts) can improve solubility by lowering ΔH. Additionally, solubility is temperature-dependent. Most drugs show an increase in solubility with temperature, although some exceptions exist due to endothermic or exothermic dissolution behavior [4].

Factors Affecting Solubility: Polymorphism, Particle Size, pH, Lipophilicity

Polymorphism- It refers to the ability of a compound to exist in multiple crystalline forms with distinct molecular arrangements and lattice energies. Different polymorphs can exhibit significantly different solubility profiles, with the amorphous form generally having higher solubility than crystalline forms due to its lack of long-range molecular order and lower lattice energy. However, amorphous forms are less stable and may recrystallize during storage, affecting solubility and bioavailability [5].

Particle Size- Reducing the particle size of a drug increases its surface area-to-volume ratio, enhancing the dissolution rate as described by the Noyes–Whitney equation, Micronization and nanonization are widely used to increase the dissolution rate of poorly soluble drugs, especially those in BCS Class II [6].

$$\frac{dC}{dt} = \frac{DA(Cs - C)}{h}$$

Where, dC/dt is the dissolution rate

D is the diffusion coefficient;

A is the surface area of the particle

C_s is the saturation solubility;

C is the concentration in the bulk medium

h is the thickness of the diffusion layer

pH and Ionization- For weakly acidic or basic drugs, pH plays a critical role in solubility through its effect on ionization. According to the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation, weak acids are more soluble at higher pH (where they exist in ionized form), while weak bases are more soluble at lower pH. Modifying the microenvironmental pH or using pH-adjusting excipients can significantly enhance solubility in dosage forms [7].

$$For\ acids: pH = pKa + \log\left(\frac{A^-}{HA}\right)$$

$$For\ bases: pH = pKa + \log\left(\frac{B}{BH}\right)$$

Lipophilicity (Log P / Log D)

Lipophilicity, expressed as the log P (partition coefficient) or log D (distribution coefficient at a given pH), describes the drug's affinity for lipophilic (non-polar) versus hydrophilic (polar) environments. Compounds with high log P values tend to be poorly soluble in water but may permeate biological membranes more readily. A balance between solubility and permeability is therefore necessary. Highly lipophilic drugs may benefit from lipid-based formulations (e.g., SEDDS, SMEDDS) to enhance solubility and oral absorption [8,9].

Physical Techniques for Solubility Enhancement

Physical modification of drug substances is one of the most widely adopted strategies to enhance the solubility and dissolution rate of poorly water-soluble drugs. These techniques do not alter the chemical structure of the drug molecule but modify its physical properties such as surface area, crystallinity, and particle morphology. This section highlights the key physical approaches used in pharmaceutical development to improve drug solubilization and bioavailability.

Particle Size Reduction (Micronization, Nanonization)

Reducing the particle size of a drug enhances its surface area, thereby accelerating its dissolution rate according to the Noyes–Whitney equation. Two common approaches to particle size reduction are micronization and nanonization. Micronization reduces particles to the micrometer range (typically 1-10 μm) using mechanical techniques such as jet milling, ball milling, or fluid energy milling, and is particularly effective for BCS Class II drugs with low solubility but sufficient permeability. However, extreme size reduction may lead to issues like particle aggregation, electrostatic charging, and compromised flowability [10]. In contrast, nanonization reduces particle size to the nanometer range (typically <1000 nm), significantly increasing surface area and, in some cases, saturation solubility due to altered thermodynamic properties. Nanonization techniques include wet media milling, high-pressure homogenization, and precipitation-based methods, often requiring the use of stabilizers or surfactants to prevent particle agglomeration. Beyond improving solubility, nanosized drug delivery systems can enhance membrane permeability, enable targeted delivery, and allow controlled drug release, making them suitable for diverse administration routes such as oral, ocular, and parenteral [11].

Solid Dispersions and Amorphous Systems

Solid dispersions are pharmaceutical systems in which poorly water-soluble drugs are molecularly dispersed within an inert, typically hydrophilic polymer matrix, aiming to improve solubility and dissolution rates. This enhancement is achieved by reducing the drug's crystallinity, often converting it into the amorphous form, improving wettability, and preventing particle aggregation. Based on the physical state of the drug, solid dispersions can be classified as crystalline, amorphous, or molecularly dispersed, with amorphous forms generally exhibiting superior solubility due to their higher free energy and disordered molecular structure though they may be prone to recrystallization over time. Common preparation techniques include solvent evaporation (e.g., rotary evaporation, spray drying), hot-melt extrusion (HME), kneading, and co-precipitation, each selected based on the drug's thermal and chemical stability. Polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP), hydroxypropyl methylcellulose (HPMC), and poloxamers are frequently employed for their excellent solubilizing and stabilizing capabilities. The overall performance and stability of solid dispersions are critically dependent on drug-polymer miscibility, processing methods, and storage conditions [12,13].

Cryogenic and Freeze-Drying Techniques

Cryogenic processing and lyophilization (freeze-drying) are advanced physical techniques employed to enhance the solubility of poorly water-soluble drugs by generating highly porous, low-density particles with improved wettability and rapid dispersion. Cryogenic methods utilize rapid cooling or solidification of drug solutions or suspensions with cryogenic fluids such as liquid nitrogen, resulting in nanostructured or amorphous particles that exhibit increased surface area and solubility; techniques like spray freezing into liquid (SFL) and ultrasonic spray freezing are commonly applied for producing finely structured powders suitable for oral or inhalation delivery [14]. Freeze-drying, on the other hand, involves sublimation of a frozen drug solution under vacuum to yield a dry, porous matrix, making it particularly valuable for thermolabile drugs, biologics, and parenteral formulations. The resulting lyophilized powders exhibit enhanced reconstitution, dissolution rates, and storage stability, especially when formulated with stabilizing agents such as sugars or amino acids. While both techniques are effective, they are resource-intensive, requiring specialized equipment, extended processing time, and careful formulation design; however, for high-value products like injectables and biopharmaceuticals, these methods offer superior performance and long-term stability, justifying their use in advanced drug development [15].

Chemical Approaches

Chemical modification of drug substances is a powerful strategy to enhance solubility and dissolution, particularly when physical techniques prove insufficient. These methods involve altering the drug molecule or forming molecular interactions to improve aqueous solubility

without compromising pharmacological activity. This section discusses the major chemical approaches employed in modern pharmaceutics to address solubility challenges.

Salt Formation and pH Adjustment

Salt formation is one of the most commonly used and regulatory-accepted techniques to improve the solubility of ionizable drugs. It involves converting a weakly acidic or basic drug into its more water-soluble ionic form by reacting it with a suitable counterion. For example, converting a poorly soluble weak acid into a sodium or potassium salt can significantly increase solubility in aqueous media. Similarly, basic drugs may be transformed into hydrochloride, sulfate, or mesylate salts. The choice of salt form depends on factors such as solubility, stability, crystallinity, and toxicity. pH adjustment is a complementary strategy that exploits the pH–solubility relationship for ionizable compounds. By modifying the formulation's microenvironmental pH or using buffering agents, the drug can be maintained in its ionized (and more soluble) form in the gastrointestinal tract or at the site of administration. However, extreme pH changes may lead to degradation or irritation, so this approach must be carefully optimized for safety and stability [16,17].

Co-crystals and Prodrug Strategies

Pharmaceutical co-crystals are multicomponent crystalline systems composed of an active pharmaceutical ingredient (API) and a pharmaceutically acceptable co-former, bound via non-covalent interactions (e.g., hydrogen bonding). Unlike salts, co-crystals do not require the ionizable nature of the drug, making them suitable for non-ionizable compounds. They offer significant advantages such as improved solubility, dissolution rate, physical stability, and even altered mechanical properties. Co-formers like saccharin, nicotinamide, and caffeine are frequently used in co-crystal engineering, and techniques such as solvent evaporation, grinding, or supercritical fluid processing are employed for their synthesis [18].

Prodrug strategies involve the covalent modification of a parent drug molecule to create a pharmacologically inactive or less active derivative with improved solubility or permeability. Once administered, the prodrug undergoes enzymatic or chemical conversion in vivo to release the active drug. This approach is particularly useful when the parent compound is poorly soluble due to its inherent physicochemical properties. For example, ester or phosphate prodrugs are commonly used to enhance aqueous solubility. While prodrug development requires more extensive safety and metabolism studies, it provides a versatile platform to overcome solubility-limiting barriers and expand therapeutic applications [19].

Complexation with Cyclodextrins and Other Carriers

Molecular complexation is an effective strategy to enhance the apparent solubility and stability of hydrophobic drugs by forming inclusion or non-inclusion complexes with suitable host molecules. Cyclodextrins (CDs), a family of cyclic oligosaccharides, are widely used for this

purpose due to their unique ability to encapsulate lipophilic drugs within their hydrophobic cavity while maintaining aqueous solubility through their hydrophilic outer surface. Among the various types, β-cyclodextrin, hydroxypropyl-β-cyclodextrin (HP-β-CD), and sulfobutylether-β-cyclodextrin (SBE-β-CD) are frequently used in pharmaceutical formulations [18]. Complexation not only improves solubility but also enhances drug stability, masks bitter taste, and reduces irritation. The choice of cyclodextrin and method of complexation (e.g., kneading, freeze-drying, spray drying) is determined by the drug's physicochemical properties and the desired application. Beyond cyclodextrins, other complexing agents like tannins, urea, and surfactant-based micelles may also be used to form hydrotropic or solubilizing complexes that improve drug solubilization without altering chemical structure [20]. Different chemical solubility enhancement techniques described in a table 1.

Table 1: Chemical Solubility Enhancement Techniques

Technique	Principle	Advantages	Limitations
Salt Formation	Conversion to ionic form for improved solubility	High solubility, scalable, regulatory-accepted	Limited to ionizable drugs
pH Adjustment	pH control to maintain drug in ionized state	Simple, effective for weak acids/bases	May cause degradation or local irritation
Co-crystallization	API + co-former via non-covalent bonding	Enhanced solubility and stability	Requires co-former screening and stability data
Prodrug Strategy	Chemical modification to improve solubility	Versatile, may improve permeability	Complex synthesis and regulatory considerations
Cyclodextrin Complexation	Host–guest inclusion complexes	Safe, enhances solubility and taste masking	Limited drug loading and higher excipient ratio

Formulation-Based Techniques

Formulation-based strategies for solubility enhancement involve the incorporation of functional excipients into the dosage form to increase drug solubilization, promote dispersion, maintain supersaturation, or prevent precipitation. These techniques are widely applied during formulation development because they are compatible with a range of APIs, scalable for industrial manufacturing, and often aligned with regulatory and safety requirements. This section discusses three major categories of formulation approaches for solubility enhancement.

Use of Surfactants, Cosolvents, and Wetting Agents

Surfactants, cosolvents, and wetting agents are commonly used excipients that facilitate the dissolution of poorly soluble drugs by altering interfacial tension, improving wettability, and increasing solvation power. These excipients, when used synergistically, can significantly improve solubility and absorption, although careful consideration is needed for their concentration, toxicity, and potential for drug-excipient interactions.

- Surfactants are amphiphilic molecules that reduce surface and interfacial tension, enabling better wetting of drug particles and solubilization through micelle formation. Non-ionic surfactants such as Polysorbates (e.g., Tween 80), polyethylene glycol (PEG), and Cremophor EL are widely used in both oral and parenteral formulations. Surfactants also assist in emulsification and can improve the permeability of drugs across biological membranes [21].
- Cosolvents are water-miscible organic solvents (e.g., ethanol, propylene glycol, polyethylene glycol 400) used to enhance the solubility of hydrophobic drugs by modifying solvent polarity. Cosolvent systems are particularly useful for injectable formulations, though they must be carefully optimized to prevent precipitation upon dilution and minimize toxicity.
- Wetting agents reduce the contact angle between drug particles and dissolution medium, facilitating rapid dispersion. Agents like sodium lauryl sulfate (SLS) and lecithin are often added to solid oral dosage forms to enhance wetting and improve dissolution rates [22].

Lipid-Based Systems: SEDDS, SMEDDS, SNEDDS

Lipid-based drug delivery systems have emerged as highly effective vehicles for enhancing the solubility and bioavailability of lipophilic drugs, particularly BCS Class II and IV compounds. These systems utilize oils, surfactants, and cosurfactants to form emulsions or microemulsions upon contact with aqueous fluids in the gastrointestinal tract. Lipid-based systems can prevent drug precipitation by maintaining drugs in solubilized form throughout the GI tract and promoting lymphatic absorption. Key formulation components include long- and medium-chain triglycerides, Labrafac, Capmul, and surfactants like Labrasol and Kolliphor RH40 [23]. These systems can be filled into soft or hard gelatin capsules and are compatible with scalable manufacturing technologies.

- Self-Emulsifying Drug Delivery Systems (SEDDS) are isotropic mixtures of drug, oil, surfactant, and sometimes cosurfactant that spontaneously emulsify upon dilution in GI fluids under gentle agitation. They typically form emulsions with droplet sizes >100 nm.

- Self-Microemulsifying Drug Delivery Systems (SMEDDS) form thermodynamically stable microemulsions with smaller droplet sizes (typically 20–100 nm), resulting in improved absorption and bioavailability due to enhanced surface area and solubilization.
- Self-Nanoemulsifying Drug Delivery Systems (SNEDDS) produce nano-sized emulsions (<50 nm) with even higher solubilization efficiency and potential for lymphatic transport, bypassing hepatic first-pass metabolism [24].

Solubilizing Polymers and Precipitation Inhibitors

Solubilizing polymers are hydrophilic macromolecules that enhance the solubility of poorly water-soluble drugs by stabilizing them in amorphous or supersaturated states, forming hydrogen bonds, or acting as solubilizing carriers. Widely used polymers include polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP), hydroxypropyl methylcellulose (HPMC), polyethylene glycol (PEG), and modern synthetic carriers like Soluplus and Eudragit derivatives. These polymers are fundamental components in solid dispersions, amorphous solid dispersions, and hot-melt extrudates, where they not only facilitate enhanced solubility and dissolution but also contribute to the physical and chemical stability of the drug product [25]. In parallel, precipitation inhibitors are excipients that help sustain the supersaturation of a drug in solution following dissolution, thus improving and prolonging drug absorption. Since drugs in a supersaturated state are prone to recrystallization, polymers such as HPMC-AS, hydroxypropyl cellulose (HPC), and PVP-VA are employed to inhibit nucleation and crystal growth through steric hindrance or molecular interactions. These excipients are especially valuable in advanced delivery systems like supersaturable self-emulsifying drug delivery systems (S-SEDDS) and nanocrystal-based formulations, where maintaining a supersaturated state is essential for maximizing bioavailability [26,27].

Future Perspectives

Future advancements in solubility enhancement are expected to be driven by the integration of material science, nanotechnology, and computational modeling to develop more rational, efficient, and patient-tailored drug delivery systems. Novel polymeric carriers, stimuli-responsive materials, and hybrid nanostructures are being explored to provide controlled release and improved stability of poorly soluble drugs. The application of artificial intelligence and machine learning in predictive solubility modeling and formulation optimization is poised to accelerate development timelines and reduce empirical trial-and-error approaches [28]. Additionally, the growing emphasis on green chemistry and regulatory compliance will likely steer innovation toward more sustainable, scalable, and biocompatible solubilization strategies. As personalized medicine gains prominence, solubility enhancement techniques will need to adapt to increasingly complex molecules, diverse administration routes, and individualized therapeutic regimens, underscoring the need for interdisciplinary collaboration and continued research in this evolving field [29].

Conclusion:

Solubility remains one of the most critical challenges in modern drug development, directly impacting the bioavailability, therapeutic efficacy, and commercial success of pharmaceutical products. With a significant proportion of new drug candidates exhibiting poor aqueous solubility, the application of strategic solubility enhancement techniques is indispensable. A diverse array of physical, chemical, and formulation-based approaches ranging from particle size reduction and solid dispersions to salt formation, complexation, and advanced lipid-based systems offer viable solutions to overcome solubility limitations. Each technique must be selected and optimized based on the specific physicochemical properties of the drug molecule, therapeutic needs, and intended route of administration. As the field advances, the integration of novel materials, predictive modeling, and patient-centric design will play a pivotal role in tailoring more effective and scalable drug delivery systems. Ultimately, enhancing solubility not only facilitates better pharmacokinetic profiles and clinical outcomes but also strengthens the overall pipeline success rate in pharmaceutical research and development.

References:

1. Bajait MG, Ghatmale R, Mundhe B. Importance of solubility and solubility enhancement techniques. J. Medi. Pharm. Allied. Sci.. 2019;878:2403-16.
2. Jagtap S, Magdum C, Jadge D, Jagtap R. Solubility enhancement technique: a review. Journal of pharmaceutical sciences and Research. 2018 Sep 1;10(9):2205-11.
3. Kale AR, Kakade S, Bhosale A. A Review on: Solubility Enhancement Techniques. Journal of Current Pharma Research. 2020;10(2):3630-47.
4. Deshmukh AS, Tiwari KJ, Mahajan VR. Solubility enhancement techniques for poorly water-soluble drugs. Int. J. Pharm. Sci. Nanotechnol. 2017 May 31;10(8).
5. Ansari MJ. An overview of techniques for multifold enhancement in solubility of poorly soluble drugs. Current Issues in Pharmacy and Medical Sciences. 2019 Dec 31;32(4):203-9.
6. Kumari L, Choudhari Y, Patel P, Gupta GD, Singh D, Rosenholm JM, Bansal KK, Kurmi BD. Advancement in solubilization approaches: A step towards bioavailability enhancement of poorly soluble drugs. Life. 2023 Apr 27;13(5):1099.
7. Bhalani DV, Nutan B, Kumar A, Singh Chandel AK. Bioavailability enhancement techniques for poorly aqueous soluble drugs and therapeutics. Biomedicines. 2022 Aug 23;10(9):2055.
8. Singh D, Bedi N, Tiwary AK. Enhancing solubility of poorly aqueous soluble drugs: Critical appraisal of techniques. Journal of pharmaceutical investigation. 2018 Sep;48:509-26.

9. Yadav K, Sachan AK, Kumar S, Dubey A. Techniques for increasing solubility: A review of conventional and new strategies. Asian Journal of Pharmaceutical Research and Development. 2022 May 16;10(2):144-53.
10. Ainurofiq A, Putro DS, Ramadhani DA, Putra GM, Santo LD. A review on solubility enhancement methods for poorly water-soluble drugs. Journal of Reports in Pharmaceutical Sciences. 2021 Jan 1;10(1):137-47.
11. Khatri H, Hussain MS, Tyagi S. Solubility enhancement techniques: an overview. World Journal of Pharmaceutical Research. 2022 Mar 3;11(5):34-40.
12. Mahapatra AP, Patil V, Patil R. Solubility enhancement of poorly soluble drugs by using novel techniques: A comprehensive review. Int. J. PharmTech Res. 2020;13(2):80-93.
13. Mahesha BS, Sheeba FR, Deepak HK. A comprehensive review of green approaches to drug solubility enhancement. Drug Development and Industrial Pharmacy. 2025 Apr 27:1-1.
14. Khan KU, Minhas MU, Badshah SF, Suhail M, Ahmad A, Ijaz S. Overview of nanoparticulate strategies for solubility enhancement of poorly soluble drugs. Life sciences. 2022 Feb 15;291:120301.
15. Das B, Baidya AT, Mathew AT, Yadav AK, Kumar R. Structural modification aimed for improving solubility of lead compounds in early phase drug discovery. Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry. 2022 Feb 15;56:116614.
16. Thakur V, Dogra S, Verma S, Vashist H. Solubility enhancement techniques. World J Pharma Res. 2020 Aug 24;9(13):265-82.
17. Narmada I. Contemporary Review on Solubility Enhancement Techniques. Journal of Drug Delivery & Therapeutics. 2023 Feb 1;13(2).
18. Ghumre PB, Bote SS, Kotgir SR, Korde AB, Bhosale BS, Chaudhari RB. Solubility Enhancement Technique—A Review. World J. Pharm. Res. 2021 Jun 15;10:571-89.
19. Thapa RK, Choi HG, Kim JO, Yong CS. Analysis and optimization of drug solubility to improve pharmacokinetics. Journal of Pharmaceutical Investigation. 2017 Mar;47:95-110.
20. Motwani A, Hatwar PR, Dr Bakal RL. Advances in Solubility Enhancement of Poorly Soluble Drugs in Pharmaceutical Development: A Review of Current Techniques and Strategies. International journal of pharmaceutical sciences. 2024;2(11):138-48.
21. Alhayyan AM, Alazmi AH, Albayabi MS, Al Nass AA, Alhafufi HR, Alanezi MT, Al-Mutawa BA, Alanazi AS, Alameer I, Alshammari AD. Techniques for Improving Solubility. International Journal of Medical Science and Dental Research. 2022;5(6):199-204.

22. Rahman A, Haider MF, Naseem N, Rahman N. Solubility of drugs, their enhancement, factors affecting and their limitations: a review. Int. J. Pharm. Sci. Rev. Res. 2023 Apr;79:78-94.
23. Khalikov SS, Dushkin AV. Strategies for solubility enhancement of anthelmintics. Pharmaceutical Chemistry Journal. 2020 Aug;54(5):504-8.
24. Kumar LA, Pattnaik G, Satapathy BS, Patro CS, Naik S, Dash AK. Solubility enhancement techniques: Updates and prospectives. J Pharm Negat Results. 2022;13(8).
25. Rashid M, Malik MY, Singh SK, Chaturvedi S, Gayen JR, Wahajuddin M. Bioavailability enhancement of poorly soluble drugs: the holy grail in pharma industry. Current Pharmaceutical Design. 2019 Mar 1;25(9):987-1020.
26. Das T, Mehta CH, Nayak UY. Multiple approaches for achieving drug solubility: An in silico perspective. Drug discovery today. 2020 Jul 1;25(7):1206-12.
27. Kanikkannan N. Technologies to improve the solubility, dissolution and bioavailability of poorly soluble drugs. J. Anal. Pharm. Res. 2018 Feb 1;7(1):00198.
28. Zhang X, Xing H, Zhao Y, Ma Z. Pharmaceutical dispersion techniques for dissolution and bioavailability enhancement of poorly water-soluble drugs. Pharmaceutics. 2018 Jun 23;10(3):74.
29. Liu Y, Liang Y, Yuhong J, Xin P, Han JL, Du Y, Yu X, Zhu R, Zhang M, Chen W, Ma Y. Advances in nanotechnology for enhancing the solubility and bioavailability of poorly soluble drugs. Drug Design, Development and Therapy. 2024 Dec 31:1469-95.

AN OVERVIEW OF ANGIOEDEMA

Ujjval P. Vaghela*, Harshkumar Brahmbhatt, Mahavir Sharma, Rahul Trivedi
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Vadodara, Gujrat
*Corresponding author E-mail: ujjvalvaghela08@gmail.com

Abstract:
Angioedema can happen with or without nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications, especially cyclooxygenase 1 inhibitors, without urticaria, and leukotrienes may have a special role in causing the edema. Reactions to contrast chemicals are like allergies because they cause basophil and mast cell degranulation without a specific IgE antibody. They can also happen in a broad way, which is called anaphylactoid. Mast cell degranulation or the activation of the kallikrein-kinin cascade can both produce angioedema. In the first example, angioedema can happen when immunoglobulin E (IgE) causes an allergic reaction to foods or medications. This can lead to acute urticaria or a more serious anaphylactic reaction. Angioedema goes along with chronic urticaria in 40% of patients. About half of these patients have an autoimmune mechanism in which IgG antibodies target either the subunit of the IgE receptor (40%) or IgE itself (5%–10%). Bradykinin is the chemical that causes angioedema in types I and II of hereditary angioedema (C1 inhibitor [INH] deficiency) and the novel type III illness, some of which are caused by a mutation in factor XII. Acquired C1 INH deficiency looks a lot like the hereditary condition. It happens when immune complexes in the blood deplete C1 INH or when an IgG antibody attacks C1 INH. This syndrome shows up as swelling of the face, lips, tongue, larynx, genitals, and extremities that is not pitting and is not symmetrical. Any area of the body might be affected. Allergic responses and ACE inhibitors are two common things that can induce angioedema.

Keywords: Angioedema, ACE Inhibitors, Immunoglobulin E, Cyclooxygenase 1 (COX-1) Inhibitors.

1. Introduction:

Angioedema is a sudden swelling of the skin, mucous membranes, or both, including the upper respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts. It usually lasts from a few hours to three days. The tissues that were affected then go back to normal [1]. The face, hands, feet, and genitals are some of the places where it happens most often. The most prevalent are swelling of the lips and eyes (periorbital). It's especially bad when the tongue, pharynx, and larynx swell up. Laryngeal edema can kill you, but pharyngeal edema and tongue swelling can also be quite bad if they are really big [2].

2. Pathophysiology

Localized plasma extravasation with a quick rise in permeability of submucosal or subcutaneous capillaries and postcapillary venules produce angioedema. Histamine or bradykinin must be released for most causes of angioedema to happen. Other vasoactive chemicals may also play a role. But there isn't any solid information about prostaglandins, leukotrienes, enzymes like tryptase, cytokines, or chemokines. Of course, leukotrienes are to blame when angioedema happens with cyclooxygenase 1 (COX-1) inhibitors [3].

When immunoglobulin E (IgE) on the surface of mast cells or basophils crosslinks with an antigen, histamine can be released, which is what happens in allergic reactions. IgG anti-IgE or IgG anti-IgE receptor antibody might cause the same cells to become active in an autoimmune way. The second antibody joins the > subunit of nearby IgE receptors to turn on skin mast cells. Immune complexes can make complement work, which lets C3a, C4a, and C5a out. Each of them affects receptors on mast cells and basophils, which causes histamine to be released without the help of IgE antibodies. Histamine release causes angioedema that comes with urticaria, but other vasoactive variables may also play a role. Angioedema is also more common with urticaria.

Bradykinin is the cause of angioedema that happens when angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors stop bradykinin from breaking down, which makes levels go up. The plasma or tissue bradykinin Y forming mechanisms can both make bradykinin. If you don't have enough C1 inhibitor (INH), either because you were born with it or because you got it later in life, your body makes too much bradykinin because the enzymes kallikrein and activated factor XII aren't being stopped [4].

Table 1 shows the most prevalent causes of angioedema and how to tell them apart.

1. Allergic/anaphylaxis Foods, for example, peanuts, shellfish, milk, eggs, tree nuts Drugs, especially penicillin and sulfa drugs and their derivatives Venoms, stinging insects (bees, yellow jacket, hornet, wasp) and fire ants
2. Associated with physical processes, for example, cold urticaria, cholinergic urticaria, vibratory angioedema, exercise-induced anaphylaxis
3. Associated with chronic urticaria, either autoimmune or idiopathic
4. Vasculitis, idiopathic urticarial vasculitis, and urticaria associated with connective tissue diseases
5. Anaphylactoid, radiocontrast agents
6. NSAID induced
7. C1 INH deficiency (hereditary, acquired)
8. ACE inhibitors
9. Idiopathic angioedema
a. Histamine, dependent (histaminergic)
b. Histamine, independent (nonhistaminergic)

3. Diagnostic Reflections

Angioedema is a swelling that happens while the skin (or mucous membrane) above it is normal or red. It usually doesn't stay more than 72 hours, and the area that was affected goes back to normal. It could then happen again in the same place or in different places. It might or might not be itchy, but when it is, it's usually not very bad. There may be a scorching dysesthesia. Before the swelling becomes clear, the area may tingle and feel a little numb. A hive or urticarial lesion has a clear line between normal skin and skin that is affected. It has a lot of redness that goes away when pressure is applied, it is usually quite itchy, and it can be felt but does not form a lump like angioedema does [5]. Most urticarial lesions go away in 8 to 36 hours, but angioedema, if it's bad, can linger longer. With inflammatory bowel disease, especially Crohn's disease, you may notice swelling that lasts for weeks or months at a period in the face, especially the lips. Melkersson-Rosenthal syndrome is a group of three conditions: granulomatous cheilitis (which can't be told apart from Crohn's disease by biopsy), geographic tongue, and Bell's palsy. The swelling that these things cause is not angioedema, but it can be easily confused with it. People who are allergic to foods and medications, including anaphylaxis, commonly have both urticaria and angioedema. Both may be present in physically caused urticarias (though hives are more common) or in people with chronic idiopathic or autoimmune urticaria/angioedema. Angioedema without hives is less common, however it can happen in allergic (IgE-mediated) reactions. Angioedema is a sign of C1 INH deficiency (which can be inherited or acquired), and it doesn't come with urticaria. ACE inhibitor angioedema may have some urticaria, but angioedema is clearly the main problem. Idiopathic angioedema, on the other hand, has no hives by definition [6].

The following are the most common types of swelling that are confused with angioedema [7]:

1. Swelling or puffiness on both sides of the face or hands that happens when a woman's hormones alter
2. Peripheral edema (pitting) caused by vascular insufficiency, congestive heart failure, liver or kidney dysfunction
3. Swelling in the face that won't go away because of superior vena cava syndrome
4. Granulomatous cheilitis causes swelling that doesn't go away on the face, usually in the lips or eyes. a. Linked to Crohn's disease b. Melkersson-Rosenthal syndrome, which makes geographic tongue and Bell's palsy more likely to happen.

4. Treatment

Think about any prescription or over-the-counter drugs that could induce angioedema on its own or alongside urticaria. If you take the medicine every day, an IgE-dependent mechanism won't create symptoms that happen just sometimes or not at all. You can either get rid of drugs you

think are bad or find a non-cross-reactive substitute. It is normal to test the skin for penicillins, cephalosporins, and local anesthetics.

When symptoms come and go, foods are thought to be the source of angioedema. If symptoms happen every day, it means something was eaten routinely. Usually, reactions happen within a few hours of eating the allergen. Removing a probable food from the diet should stop the symptoms. Skin tests or in vitro radioallergosorbent tests can be used to check for food allergies (IgE-dependent mechanism). False negatives are not common. You can either cut off foods that make you feel better or eat them in a controlled way. The double-blind placebo-controlled food challenge is the gold standard.

1. Cold urticaria: Ice cube challenge; test for cryoglobulins and cold agglutinins
2. Cholinergic urticaria: A test of exercise in a warm place
3. Local heat urticaria: Putting hot water that is bearable in a test tube on the upper arm for four minutes.
4. Dermatographism: When you scratch your skin, it should cause a flare-and-wheal reaction that is typicalserv.
5. Pressure urticaria/angioedema: Putting steady pressure on the area for 5 minutes makes it swell 4 to 8 hours later, but just in that area.
6. Vibratory angioedema: When the forearm vibrates with a lab vortex for one minute, it causes a lot of swelling in the next ten minutes.

Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs: Events should happen after taking aspirin or another NSAID (nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medicine). All members that are cyclooxygenase 1 (COX-1) inhibitors have a class-specific response. Once COX-1 is blocked, arachidonic acid may be shunted toward the formation of leukotrienes, which could be part of the reason of the symptoms. People can usually handle acetaminophen (Tylenol) with COX-2 inhibitors [8].

ACE Inhibitors: Symptoms can happen at any time and don't have to be linked to how much, how long, or how often you take the drug. If urticaria is very bad, these are not likely to be the reason. Severe angioedema, especially in the face, tongue, pharynx, and larynx, is more common. Sometimes, swelling of the intestinal wall can cause vomiting, cramps, or diarrhea. If angioedema is a problem, these medicines should be stopped in any patient and replaced with treatments from other classes [9].

5. Acute allergic angioedema

Urticaria and acute allergic angioedema nearly invariably happen together, and both show up within one to two hours of coming into contact with the allergen. People who have atopic conditions are more likely to have reactions to foods or medications, although people who don't have allergic rhinitis, asthma, or atopic dermatitis might still have them. The reaction is self-

limiting and normally lasts 1 to 3 days. However, it will happen again and again each time the person comes into contact with the allergen or a cross-reacting allergy.

The first step in sensitization makes IgE that reacts with the allergen. The high-affinity IgE receptor's > subunit connects the IgE to cutaneous mast cells. The A subunit works like an amplifier, and the F-dimer subunit sends a signal through tyrosine kinases that are attached to it. When cells are activated, they release histamine from special metachromatic granules, make arachidonic acid metabolites such prostaglandin D2 and leukotrienes C4 and D4, and slowly release cytokines and chemokines. When neutrophils (a limited number), eosinophils, basophils, monocytes, and CD4(+) lymphocytes of the Th2 subclass build up, a cellular infiltrate similar to the late-phase reaction seen in the nose or lungs occurs. Swelling can happen all over the face or just in certain places, like the lips, eyes, tongue, and throat.

Other common places are the hands, feet, and, for men, the penis and scrotum. If you also have urticaria, this set of symptoms would be called acute urticaria with angioedema. However, the presence of additional organ symptoms suggests anaphylaxis, such as respiratory (laryngeal edema, asthma), gastrointestinal (abdominal discomfort, vomiting, and diarrhea), and cardiovascular (hypotension) [10]. Depending on where it is, how bad it is, and how quickly it occurs, antihistamines, corticosteroids, and epinephrine are used to treat acute allergic angioedema. Angioedema goes away on its own in 48 to 72 hours, although therapy is particularly crucial in the first few hours after it starts to develop. You can take antihistamines by mouth, and they work in around 40 minutes. Antihistamines that don't make you sleepy may not be strong enough for this purpose, thus hydroxyzine or diphenhydramine at 25 to 50 mg four times a day for one to three days is suggested. You might be given an oral corticosteroid, which will take 5 to 6 hours to work but will minimize the time that symptoms last. A single dosage of 40 to 60 mg of prednisone can be given again on day 2 or 3 if needed, and then stopped without any taper. Epinephrine isn't necessary for swelling of the hands, feet, genitals, lips, or eyes, but it can aid with swelling of the tongue or throat, and it is very important if there is swelling of the larynx. If you have an EpiPen at home, you can use it, or you can get it at the emergency room. It works in minutes and can slow down the swelling. It can be done again once or twice every 30 minutes. True stridor and respiratory embarrassment can happen when someone has anaphylaxis, angioedema from an ACE medication, or C1 INH deficiency. In these cases, intubation or tracheostomy is needed [11].

6. Chronic urticaria and angioedema

At the moment, this condition is thought to have two groups of patients: one group has an autoimmune cause, and the other group has no known cause and is still idiopathic. Forty percent of those with chronic urticaria have angioedema, but the actual percentage and severity are probably higher in the autoimmune category. People have traditionally thought of this illness as a

continuum, with 40% of people having urticaria without angioedema, 40% having both, and 20% having solely angioedema. This author thinks (with some evidence) that idiopathic angioedema is a different condition in most cases, but those with chronic urticaria plus angioedema have the same underlying causes as people with urticaria alone. It is thought that 0.5% of people have chronic urticaria, with 2/3 of them being women and 1/3 being men. Leznoff *et al.* and Leznoff and Sussman8 were the first to suggest that chronic urticaria might be an autoimmune disease. They documented 140 individuals with chronic urticaria, angioedema, or both. Seventeen of these patients had high levels of antithyroid antibodies, and eight of those had thyroid problems. Gruber et al9 suggested that anti-IgE autoantibodies might have a role in chronic urticaria, however only 5% to 10% of patients had them. This observation was confirmed. However, hide et al then reported data indicating around one third of patients have a functional IgG antibody directed to the > subunit of the IgE receptor. When the receptor is cross-linked, it turns on basophils or cutaneous mast cells. This finding was confirmed many times using both types of cells. When IgG antibodies attach to the > subunit of the IgE receptor or IgG anti-IgE, they create complexes that activate the classical complement cascade. This splits C5 and releases C5a anaphylatoxin, which then interacts with the C5a receptor to release more histamine. The percentage increase in histamine release in vitro varies a lot from patient to patient. On average, two-thirds of the histamine release is induced by the autoantibody and one-third by complement. IgG1 and IgG3 are the main subclasses of pathogenic IgG that cause this reaction. Immunoglobulin G4 may help (although not very often) and does not fix complement. The immunoglobulin G2 antibody doesn't work, and it might be to blame for the false positives that happen with binding techniques like immunoblot or enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. This means that a functioning assay is still needed to find the autoimmune subpopulation. Histamine, leukotrienes, and cytokines are all released, which leads to cellular infiltration. looks a lot like the allergic late-phase reaction [12].

For persistent urticaria and angioedema, second-generation nonsedating antihistamines are tried first, and if it doesn't work, a double dose may be needed. European standards even say that the dose should be four times higher, although this would be very hard to do in the United States because of the cost. Some people say that dietary changes can get rid of pseudoallergens, but it's not obvious how they work, if they do at all. If controlling symptoms isn't enough, adults can take a first-generation antihistamine like hydroxyzine or diphenhydramine in divided doses of 25 to 50 mg four times a day. You can add H2 receptor antagonists or leukotriene antagonists, however they only help reduce symptoms a little bit at best. For example, patients with the most severe condition may be given cyclosporine or low-dose prednisone, starting with 10 mg/d and going down by 1 mg at a time or 20 to 25 mg every other day and going down by 2.5 to 5.0 mg at a time. You can treat acute episodes of angioedema with a single dosage of 40 to 60 mg of

prednisone. If you need to, you can do this again the next day. After then, corticosteroid is stopped without any tapering [13].

7. Urticarial Vasculitis

Some people with cutaneous vasculitis have urticaria with or without angioedema. This might be part of a broader connective tissue disorder, or it can be a separate condition that solely affects the skin. There is real necrosis of small blood vessels (usually venules) in the skin with petechiae and/or purpura, which makes it different from acute or chronic urticaria/angioedema. The hives linger longer, for 24 to 48 hours. roughly 1% of those with chronic urticaria have this condition, or roughly 1 in 2000. When a biopsy is done, neutrophils are the most common type of cell, along with broken cells (leukocytoclastic angiitis). Idiopathic leukocytoclastic angiitis is the name given to a condition when there is no known underlying disease. You might see angioedema, but urticaria is more common. You should think about systemic lupus erythematosus, cryoglobulinemia, polyarteritis nodosa, Wegener granulomatosis, and Sjogren syndrome. The treatment is aimed at both the skin problems and the underlying condition. Antihistamines should be attempted first, but they don't always work. Some people may need to take low doses of corticosteroids every day to control their symptoms, while others may respond to dapsone, colchicine, or hydroxychloroquine. The hypocomplementemic urticarial vasculitis syndrome is one unique condition that is marked by a circulating IgG antibody against C1q and low levels of C4 and C3. Hydroxychloroquine works especially well on the urticaria [14].

Urticaria/Angioedema Associated with NSAIDS

Aspirin is the most frequent NSAID that can induce angioedema. Real allergic reactions are rare. Instead, these show up as class-specific idiosyncratic reactions that rely on how well the medicine works as a COX-1 inhibitor. Some people think that stopping COX sends arachidonic acid down the lipoxygenase route, which makes too many leukotrienes. Leukotrienes, especially LTC4 and LTD4, make blood vessels swell and cause redness and swelling. LTB4, on the other hand, attracts different types of cells, especially neutrophils and to a lesser extent eosinophils. People normally do well with weak COX-1 inhibitors like acetaminophen and salicylates that aren't aspirin. COX-2 inhibitors are also frequently well tolerated [15].

Angioedema caused by ACE Inhibitors

Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, which were first used to treat high blood pressure and congestive heart failure in 1981, are made from peptides found in the venom of the Malayan snake Bothrops jararaca. They are known to boost the activity of bradykinin. ACE inhibitors are often used for both of these conditions right now. They also protect kidney function in people with diabetes and can be used for hypertensive/renal crises in people with scleroderma. Angioedema caused by ACE inhibitors is not linked to urticaria, unlike true allergic angioedema or pseudoallergic angioedema caused by NSAIDs. Also, even though angioedema can happen in

the first week of treatment, some people may have taken the ACE inhibitor for weeks or months without any problems before angioedema starts. People often forget that ACE inhibitors can cause angioedema, which can be bad because continuing to take them usually makes the attacks worse [16].

Angioedema Caused by Acquired C1 INH Deficiency

Acquired C1 INH deficiency can induce angioedema that looks the same as hereditary types. Costanzi *et al.* wrote about a patient with cold urticaria in 1969 who had C1 INH deficit and a monoclonal cryoglobulin. After that, several other patients with a similar syndrome were recorded, most of whom had lymphoproliferative illness. The cause seems to be too much C1 INH, and it happens in older age groups without a family history. Patients with lymphoma who had circulating low-molecular-weight IgM and low C1 INH levels were among the first to describe the acquired form of this disease. This entity doesn't use complement in a normal way because C1q levels are low and C4, C2, and C3 are low. This illness is different from the hereditary disorder because the C1q level is low. The low C1 INH level could be because of C1 activation by circulating immune complexes or C1 interaction with a tumor cell surface antigen, which could cause C1 to run out. C1 fixation and C1 INH depletion are induced by an anti-idiotypic antibody that binds to immunoglobulin on the surface of the B cell. This is particularly common in people with B-cell lymphoma. People who have connective tissue illnesses like systemic lupus erythematosus or cancer can also get acquired C1 INH deficiency. These people will respond to androgen therapy, which boosts C1 INH synthesis, much like people with the hereditary variety. A second type of C1 INH deficiency happens when the body makes an autoantibody that attacks C1 INH itself. These patients also don't have a family history of the disease and have low levels of C4, C1q, and C1 INH protein and function. People are starting to realize that this type of acquired C1 INH deficit is becoming more common. Normally, C1 INH is a substrate for the enzymes it inactivates. When the enzyme is active, it cleaves C1 INH, which opens up the active site in the inhibitor. The cleaved C1 INH then attaches to the enzyme in the right amount and stops it from working. When there is an antibody to C1 INH, the C1 INH is cut up and can't stop the enzyme from working. So, cleaved C1 INH that doesn't work goes around and activates the complement- and kinin-forming cascade without any problems. One case where the two types of acquired C1 INH deficiency come together is when a patient has monoclonal gammopathy, which is when the monoclonal immunoglobulin is actually an antibody to C1 INH. The immune complex-mediated loss of C1 INH and the autoantibody that targets C1 INH are examples of types 1 and 2 acquired C1 INH deficiency, respectively. Immunoblotting with an antibody to C1 INH is the easiest way to tell which kind 2 it is. The two types of the acquired disorder are different because one has a C1 INH cleavage product at 95 kd, which is not present in the inherited disorder [17].

If you have acquired C1 INH deficiency, the first step is to treat the disease that caused it, if it has been found. Then you need to take the same medications as you would for hereditary C1 INH deficiency. It is harder to treat type 2 acquired C1 INH deficit using an autoantibody that targets C1 INH since it is harder to get C1 INH back into the body. For long-term treatment, plasmapheresis and a cytotoxic drug may be needed together with preventive androgenic medications or aminocaproic acid. For short-term emergency treatment, plasma or C1 INH concentrate is given. It is evident that the latter is better because it prevents volume overload and lets you supply enough C1 INH to bind the autoantibody and elevate the C1 INH level by a lot. This is often not possible in real life. Tranexamic acid has also worked to treat type 2 acquired C1 INH deficit, which is when the bradykinin producing cascade and fibrinolysis were activated [18].

Conclusion:

All of these cause too much bradykinin to be made because they activate the plasma bradykinin Y producing pathway. The angioedema caused by angiotensin-converting Excessive bradykinin levels cause enzyme inhibitors because bradykinin degradation is stopped. Idiopathic angioedema, which means the etiology is unknown, could be histaminergic (produced by mast cell degranulation and histamine release) or nonhistaminergic. We still don't know what the mediator routes are in the second situation. A small number of people may have the same autoantibodies that are linked to chronic urticaria. Anaphylactic or anaphylactoid reactions and disorders caused by bradykinin can cause angioedema that could be life-threatening, such as laryngeal edema or tongue/pharyngeal edema that blocks the airway.

References:

1. Kaplan A. Chronic urticaria: pathogenesis and treatment. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2004;114:465Y474.
2. Greaves M. Chronic urticaria. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2000;105: 664Y672.
3. Black A. Physical urticaria and cholinergic urticaria. In: Greaves M, Kaplan A, eds. Urticaria and Angioedema. New York, NY: Marcel Dekker, 2004:171Y214.
4. Kinet J. The high-affinity IgE receptor (Fc epsilon RI): from physiology to pathology. Ann Rev Immunol. 1999;17:931Y972.
5. Zweiman B, Haralabatos I, Pham N, David M, von Allmen C. Sequential patterns of inflammatory events during developing and expressed skin late-phase reactions. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2000;105:776Y781.
6. Sabroe R, Poon E, Orchard G, Lane D, Francis DM, Barr RM, *et al.* Cutaneous inflammatory cell infiltrate in chronic idiopathic urticaria: comparison of patients with and without anti-FcepsilonRI or anti-IgE autoantibodies. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 1999;103:484Y493.

7. Leznoff A, Josse R, Denburg J, Dolovich J. Association of chronic urticaria and angioedema with thyroid autoim. Arch Dermatol. 1983;119:636Y640.
8. Leznoff A, Sussman G. Syndrome of idiopathic chronic urticaria and angioedema with thyroid autoimmunity: a study of 90 patients. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 1989;84:66Y71.
9. Gruber B, Baeza M, Marchese M, Agnello V, Kaplan AP. Prevalence and functional role of anti-IgE autoantibodies in urticarial syndromes. J Invest Dermatol. 1988;90:213Y217.
10. Hide M, Francis D, Grattan C, Hakimi J, Kochan JP, Greaves MW. Autoantibodies against the high-affinity IgE receptor as a cause of histamine release in chronic urticaria. N Engl J Med. 1993;328: 1599Y1604.
11. Fiebiger E, Maurer D, Holub H, Reininger B, Hartmann G, Woisetschla¨ger M, *et al.* Serum IgG autoantibodies directed against the alpha chain of Fc epsilon RI: a selective marker and pathogenetic factor for a distinct subset of chronic urticaria patients? J Clin Invest. 1995;96:2606Y2612.
12. Niimi N, Francis D, Kermani F, O_Donnell BF, Hide M, Kobza-Black A, *et al.* Dermal mast cell activation by autoantibodies against the high affinity IgE receptor in chronic urticaria. J Invest Dermatol. 1996;106: 1001Y1006.
13. Ferrer M, Kinet J, Kaplan A. Comparative studies of functional and binding assays for IgG anti-Fc(epsilon)RIalpha (alpha-subunit) in chronic urticaria. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 1998;101:672Y676.
14. Ferrer M, Nakazawa K, Kaplan A. Complement dependence of histamine release in chronic urticaria. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 1999;104:169Y172.
15. Kikuchi Y, Kaplan A. A role for C5a in augmenting IgG-dependent histamine release from basophils in chronic urticaria. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2002;109:114Y118.
16. Soundararajan S, Kikuchi Y, Joseph K, Kaplan AP. Functional assessment of pathogenic IgG subclasses in chronic autoimmune urticaria. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2005;115:815Y821.
17. Ferrer M, Luquin E, Sanchez-Ibarrola A, Moreno C, Sanz ML, Kaplan AP. Secretion of cytokines, histamine and leukotrienes in chronic urticaria. Int Arch Allergy Immunol. 2002;129:254Y260.
18. Elias J, Boss E, Kaplan A. Studies of the cellular infiltrate of chronic idiopathic urticaria: prominence of T-lymphocytes, monocytes, and mast cells. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 1986;78:914Y918.

NANOCARRIERS FOR ANTI-BIOFILM ANTIBIOTIC DELIVERY

Chintan Aundhia
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat 391760 India
Corresponding author E-mail: aundhia@gmail.com

Abstract:
Bacterial biofilms present a significant clinical challenge due to their inherent resistance to conventional antibiotic therapies. These structured microbial communities, encased in a protective extracellular polymeric substance (EPS), contribute to chronic infections in wounds, medical devices, lungs, and urinary tracts. Conventional antibiotics often fail to penetrate the biofilm matrix or eradicate dormant persister cells, necessitating innovative drug delivery approaches. Nanocarriers have emerged as powerful tools to overcome these barriers, offering targeted, sustained, and stimuli-responsive delivery of antimicrobial agents. This chapter explores the design and development of nanocarrier systems for anti-biofilm therapy, including liposomes, polymeric nanoparticles, dendrimers, metallic nanoparticles, and hybrid nanosystems. Emphasis is placed on strategies that enhance biofilm penetration, trigger drug release within the biofilm microenvironment, and co-deliver agents that disrupt the EPS or modulate bacterial quorum sensing. We also discuss preclinical findings, emerging translational efforts, and future challenges in optimizing nanocarriers for clinical applications. The integration of nanotechnology with anti-biofilm therapy represents a paradigm shift in managing biofilm-associated infections, offering hope for more effective and localized antibiotic treatment.

Keywords: Nanocarriers, Biofilms, Antibiotic Resistance, Targeted Drug Delivery, Polymeric Nanoparticles, Quorum Sensing Inhibition, Liposomes, Sustained Release Systems

1. Introduction:

1.1 Understanding Biofilm-Associated Infections

Biofilms are complex communities of microorganisms that adhere to biotic or abiotic surfaces and are embedded in a self-produced extracellular polymeric substance (EPS) (1). These structures serve as a defensive barrier against external stressors, including antibiotics and host immune responses. Biofilm formation is a hallmark of many chronic infections, including those associated with indwelling medical devices, chronic wounds, cystic fibrosis lungs, and urinary tract infections. It is estimated that biofilms are implicated in more than 80% of microbial infections in humans. The chronic nature of these infections is attributed not to the virulence of the pathogens but to their ability to form persistent, drug-resistant biofilms.

1.2 Challenges in Conventional Antibiotic Therapy

The clinical management of biofilm-associated infections poses considerable challenges. Antibiotics that are effective against planktonic (free-floating) bacteria often lose their efficacy when confronted with biofilm-embedded bacterial cells. The dense EPS matrix hinders the penetration of antimicrobial agents, while the altered metabolic state of bacteria within the biofilm including the presence of persister cells contributes to phenotypic resistance (2). Furthermore, the close proximity of bacterial cells within biofilms facilitates horizontal gene transfer, accelerating the spread of antibiotic resistance. As a result, high doses or prolonged antibiotic regimens are often required, increasing the risk of systemic toxicity and the emergence of multidrug-resistant strains.

1.3 The Need for Advanced Drug Delivery Approaches

Given the limitations of traditional antibiotic therapies, there is a growing need for novel strategies that can overcome the protective barriers of biofilms and deliver drugs more effectively to the site of infection. Nanocarrier-based drug delivery systems have emerged as promising platforms that can be engineered to penetrate biofilms, release drugs in a controlled or stimuli-responsive manner, and enhance the local bioavailability of antimicrobial agents (3). These systems offer the potential to reduce systemic toxicity, bypass resistance mechanisms, and improve treatment outcomes for biofilm-related infections.

2. Biofilm Structure and Resistance Mechanisms

2.1 Biofilm Formation and Maturation

The process of biofilm formation involves a sequence of stages: initial attachment, microcolony formation, maturation, and dispersion (4). In the initial phase, bacterial cells adhere to surfaces through van der Waals forces or electrostatic interactions. Once attached, they begin to secrete EPS components such as polysaccharides, proteins, lipids, and extracellular DNA (eDNA), which form the structural scaffold of the biofilm. Over time, the biofilm matures into a complex, heterogeneous structure with nutrient gradients, oxygen-depleted zones, and microenvironments that facilitate microbial survival and adaptation. Eventually, biofilm cells may disperse to colonize new niches, contributing to the spread of infection.

2.2 Extracellular Matrix as a Barrier to Antibiotics

The EPS matrix serves as the principal defense mechanism of the biofilm, restricting the diffusion of antibiotics and other antimicrobial agents. This barrier is not merely physical but also biochemical; it can bind to and sequester antimicrobial molecules, degrade them through enzymatic activity, or inactivate them via chemical interactions. For instance, the presence of β-lactamases and other degrading enzymes within the matrix can neutralize specific classes of antibiotics. The diffusion limitation also leads to sub-therapeutic concentrations of antibiotics in the deeper layers of the biofilm, allowing survival and adaptation of embedded bacterial cells (5).

2.3 Phenotypic Tolerance and Persister Cells

Within biofilms, a subpopulation of bacteria referred to as persister cells enters a dormant, non-dividing state that renders them tolerant to antibiotics targeting active cellular processes. Unlike genetically resistant strains, persisters do not harbor resistance genes but survive antimicrobial assault through metabolic inactivity (6). Once the antibiotic pressure subsides, these cells can repopulate and regenerate the biofilm, leading to chronic recurrence of infection. Phenotypic tolerance, coupled with poor antibiotic penetration and enzymatic degradation, makes biofilms extraordinarily difficult to eradicate using conventional therapies.

3. Nanocarriers for Anti-Biofilm Therapy

3.1 Design Criteria for Biofilm-Targeting Nanocarriers

Effective nanocarriers for anti-biofilm therapy must possess several key attributes. These include small particle size (typically <200 nm) to facilitate penetration into the biofilm matrix, surface modifications that allow adhesion to bacterial membranes or EPS components, and the ability to release their payload in response to specific environmental cues within the biofilm, such as acidic pH or high enzyme concentrations (7). Biocompatibility and biodegradability are essential for minimizing systemic toxicity, while surface charge plays a crucial role in interactions with the negatively charged components of the EPS.

3.2 Types of Nanocarriers Used

Liposomes are phospholipid-based vesicles capable of encapsulating hydrophilic or lipophilic drugs. Their bilayer structure mimics bacterial membranes, enhancing fusion and payload delivery. They can be surface-modified with ligands like antibodies or peptides for targeted biofilm penetration. Polymeric nanoparticles composed of materials such as PLGA (poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid)), chitosan, or polycaprolactone offer controlled drug release profiles and stability (8). Chitosan, a cationic polysaccharide, inherently interacts with negatively charged biofilm matrices and bacterial cell walls. Dendrimers are highly branched, tree-like polymers that offer multivalent functionalization sites for drug conjugation or surface targeting. They exhibit potent antimicrobial effects and can disrupt the structural integrity of biofilms. Metallic nanoparticles, particularly those based on silver, zinc oxide, and gold, possess intrinsic antimicrobial properties. These particles can generate reactive oxygen species (ROS), disrupt membrane potential, and interfere with bacterial metabolism, making them effective against both planktonic and biofilm bacteria (9). Hybrid systems integrate multiple nanocarrier technologies, such as polymer-coated metal nanoparticles or liposome-polymer conjugates, to achieve synergistic effects and overcome the limitations of single-component systems.

4. Mechanisms of Nanocarrier Action Against Biofilms

4.1 Enhanced Penetration Through EPS

The dense and heterogenous composition of the extracellular polymeric substance (EPS) represents the most significant physical and chemical barrier to effective antimicrobial therapy in biofilm-associated infections. Nanocarriers, owing to their sub-micron dimensions and tunable surface properties, are well suited to penetrate this matrix (10). Surface charge and hydrophilicity play crucial roles in this process; cationic nanocarriers exhibit electrostatic attraction toward the anionic EPS components, facilitating their transport deeper into the biofilm. Moreover, surface functionalization with hydrophilic polymers such as polyethylene glycol (PEG) can reduce opsonization and allow for deeper diffusion through hydrated channels within the matrix.

Some nanocarriers are designed to respond to environmental cues within the biofilm to modulate their surface properties dynamically. For example, zwitterionic polymers or pH-sensitive coatings can facilitate deeper penetration by shifting their charge state in acidic microenvironments typical of mature biofilms. Additionally, enzyme-sensitive nanocarriers can exploit biofilm-secreted enzymes, such as matrix metalloproteinases or lipases, to trigger local degradation of surface coatings and allow for site-specific release and deeper tissue penetration.

4.2 Sustained and Stimuli-Responsive Drug Release

One of the primary advantages of nanocarriers in biofilm therapy is their ability to sustain and control the release of antimicrobial agents over extended periods. This controlled release can maintain drug concentrations above the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) within the biofilm, which is essential for eliminating dormant or slow-growing bacterial populations (10). Materials such as PLGA, chitosan, and polycaprolactone degrade gradually, enabling prolonged release kinetics that can range from hours to weeks depending on the polymer composition, molecular weight, and environmental conditions. Stimuli-responsive release mechanisms are particularly valuable for biofilm-associated applications. These systems can be engineered to respond to specific internal stimuli such as acidic pH, high levels of glutathione, or the presence of bacterial enzymes to initiate drug release selectively within the biofilm environment. For instance, acid-sensitive linkers degrade under acidic conditions prevalent in the inner regions of biofilms, releasing the antibiotic payload precisely where it is needed most. Similarly, redox-sensitive nanoparticles disintegrate in the presence of elevated intracellular glutathione levels, facilitating intracellular drug delivery to biofilm-embedded bacteria (11).

4.3 Quorum Sensing Inhibition and Matrix Disruption

Beyond conventional antibiotic delivery, nanocarriers offer unique opportunities to target bacterial communication and biofilm stability directly. Quorum sensing (QS) is a sophisticated bacterial communication system that regulates gene expression in response to changes in cell population density (12). Through the synthesis, release, and detection of small signaling

molecules known as autoinducers, bacterial cells can collectively modulate a variety of physiological processes once a critical threshold concentration of these molecules is reached. This cell-density-dependent signaling mechanism plays a pivotal role in orchestrating behaviors that are beneficial when performed by a coordinated community, such as biofilm maturation, virulence factor secretion, and the development of antibiotic resistance. Nanocarriers can be used to deliver quorum sensing inhibitors (QSIs) that interfere with signal molecule production, reception, or degradation, thereby preventing biofilm formation or promoting its dispersal. Additionally, nanocarriers can co-deliver matrix-degrading enzymes such as DNase I, dispersin B, or proteases that actively break down the EPS scaffold. This degradation facilitates improved antibiotic diffusion and exposes bacterial cells to host immune responses. In some cases, nanoparticles themselves exhibit inherent matrix-disruptive properties. For example, silver nanoparticles not only generate oxidative stress but also alter EPS architecture through ionic interactions (13). The combination of QS inhibition and matrix degradation within a single nanocarrier platform can produce synergistic effects, greatly enhancing therapeutic efficacy.

5. Co-Delivery Strategies

Co-delivery strategies have emerged as an advanced approach to overcoming the multifaceted challenges posed by biofilm-associated infections. Biofilms, characterized by their dense extracellular polymeric substance (EPS) matrix and phenotypic antibiotic resistance, require therapeutic modalities that go beyond conventional monotherapy. By simultaneously delivering multiple agents with complementary mechanisms of action, nanocarrier-based co-delivery systems aim to dismantle the protective barriers of biofilms, enhance drug penetration, and modulate the local infection microenvironment, thereby improving the overall efficacy of antimicrobial therapy. Nanocarriers, including liposomes, polymeric nanoparticles, dendrimers, and micelles, offer a versatile platform to encapsulate and co-deliver diverse bioactive compounds while providing controlled release, targeted delivery, and protection of sensitive payloads.

5.1 Antibiotics with EPS-Degrading Enzymes

A significant impediment in treating biofilm-associated infections lies in the inability of antibiotics to penetrate the EPS, a complex matrix composed of extracellular DNA (eDNA), polysaccharides, proteins, and lipids. Co-delivery systems combining antibiotics with EPS-degrading enzymes represent a potent therapeutic strategy to address this issue. Enzymes such as DNase I, dispersin B, and various proteases can specifically degrade key components of the biofilm matrix (14). DNase I hydrolyzes extracellular DNA, which is a structural component stabilizing the biofilm network; dispersin B targets β-1,6-N-acetyl-D-glucosamine, a polysaccharide involved in biofilm cohesion; while proteases break down extracellular proteins essential for biofilm mechanical integrity. When encapsulated within nanocarriers, these

enzymes retain their functional activity and are protected from proteolytic degradation in biological environments. The nanocarriers enable the coordinated release of both enzymes and antibiotics, often triggered by biofilm-specific stimuli such as pH changes or the presence of bacterial enzymes. This dual-action approach effectively disrupts the biofilm structure, enhancing porosity and decreasing mechanical resistance, thereby allowing antibiotics to infiltrate the biofilm core and exert their bactericidal effects. Preclinical studies in models of chronic wounds and catheter-associated infections have demonstrated that such co-delivery systems significantly outperform monotherapies, achieving greater biofilm clearance and reducing infection recurrence.

5.2 Antimicrobials and Anti-Inflammatory Agents

Biofilm infections are frequently accompanied by a chronic inflammatory response, characterized by the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α), interleukin-6 (IL-6), and other mediators that contribute to tissue damage, delayed healing, and fibrosis. Co-delivering anti-inflammatory agents along with antimicrobial drugs offers a dual therapeutic advantage: while antimicrobials eradicate the infection, the anti-inflammatory agents mitigate tissue inflammation and promote regeneration. Nanocarrier systems have been designed to co-encapsulate antibiotics with anti-inflammatory drugs such as dexamethasone, curcumin, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) (15). These formulations have shown the ability to modulate immune responses, for example, by shifting macrophages from a pro-inflammatory M1 phenotype to a reparative M2 phenotype, thus creating a conducive environment for tissue repair. Natural anti-inflammatory compounds like curcumin and resveratrol, despite their therapeutic potential, suffer from poor solubility, rapid metabolism, and low bioavailability. Nanocarrier encapsulation not only enhances their stability and systemic distribution but also allows their co-delivery with antibiotics in a synergistic manner, maximizing therapeutic outcomes. This co-delivery approach is particularly valuable in the treatment of chronic wounds, periodontitis, and infections related to implanted biomaterials, where inflammation perpetuates the infection cycle and impairs healing.

5.3 Synergistic Combinations with Phytochemicals or Peptides

In addition to conventional drugs, phytochemicals and antimicrobial peptides (AMPs) have gained attention for their unique mechanisms of action against biofilms. Phytochemicals such as eugenol, carvacrol, and quercetin, and AMPs like LL-37, melittin, and defensins, exhibit anti-biofilm activity through membrane disruption, inhibition of quorum sensing pathways, and interference with bacterial metabolic processes (16). These mechanisms complement the activity of antibiotics, offering a multifaceted attack against bacterial communities. Nanocarriers provide an effective platform to co-deliver these agents along with antibiotics, ensuring their stability, improving their bioavailability, and facilitating controlled release. For instance, chitosan

nanoparticles co-loaded with ciprofloxacin and eugenol have demonstrated enhanced biofilm penetration and bacterial killing, attributed to the combined effects of membrane disruption and antibiotic action. Likewise, liposomal and dendrimer-based formulations containing tobramycin and AMPs such as LL-37 or melittin have shown increased efficacy against multi-species biofilms of clinically significant pathogens like *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Staphylococcus aureus*. Importantly, the modular design of nanocarriers allows precise tuning of drug loading ratios, release profiles, and targeting capabilities, enabling the development of customized formulations suited for specific biofilm types and infection sites. This synergistic co-delivery approach not only enhances bacterial clearance but also helps in minimizing the development of antibiotic resistance by reducing the required antibiotic dose and broadening the spectrum of biofilm disruption mechanisms.

6. Challenges and Future Perspectives

6.1 Safety, Biocompatibility, and Toxicity Concerns

While nanocarrier-based drug delivery systems hold immense promise for biofilm-targeted therapies, their clinical translation is often hindered by safety and toxicity concerns. The physicochemical characteristics that enable efficient biofilm penetration such as nanoscale size, surface charge, and reactivity can also lead to unintended interactions with host tissues. For example, positively charged nanoparticles may cause hemolysis, cytotoxicity, or pro-inflammatory responses due to their strong affinity for cellular membranes. Inorganic nanoparticles, especially metallic ones such as silver or zinc oxide, can induce oxidative stress in mammalian cells, potentially leading to mitochondrial damage and apoptosis. Furthermore, long-term exposure to non-biodegradable materials raises concerns regarding accumulation in organs such as the liver, spleen, and kidneys. Therefore, a detailed evaluation of the biocompatibility and pharmacokinetics of nanocarrier formulations is essential before clinical deployment. Regulatory guidelines increasingly emphasize the importance of comprehensive toxicity profiling, including assessments of genotoxicity, immunogenicity, and off-target effects in both in vitro and in vivo models. To address these issues, there is a growing interest in developing fully biodegradable and naturally derived nanocarrier systems, such as those based on chitosan, alginate, or silk fibroin (17).

6.2 Regulatory Hurdles for Nanomedicines

Despite a growing body of preclinical evidence supporting the use of nanocarriers in biofilm therapy, the number of approved products remains limited. Regulatory pathways for nanomedicines are still evolving, and there is a lack of harmonized global standards for evaluating their safety, efficacy, and quality. Current frameworks often require substantial data on the physicochemical properties of nanoparticles, including size distribution, surface chemistry, aggregation behavior, and release profiles under physiological conditions. Moreover,

the complexity of multifunctional nanocarriers especially those involving co-delivery or stimuli-responsive mechanisms poses additional challenges for standardization and batch reproducibility. The integration of advanced analytical tools, such as high-resolution imaging, single-particle tracking, and computational modeling, is critical for regulatory submissions. Collaborative efforts between academic researchers, industry stakeholders, and regulatory agencies are needed to develop clear guidelines that facilitate the clinical translation of these technologies while ensuring patient safety.

6.3 Personalized and Precision Anti-Biofilm Therapies

Another promising yet underexplored direction in nanocarrier development is the application of personalized medicine principles. The composition, architecture, and antibiotic susceptibility of biofilms vary significantly depending on the infection site, microbial species, and patient immune status. Personalized nanocarrier systems could be tailored based on patient-specific biofilm profiles, incorporating customized drug combinations, targeting ligands, and release triggers. Advancements in diagnostic technologies, such as biosensors and next-generation sequencing, could support the rapid characterization of biofilm infections, enabling the design of individualized treatment regimens. Machine learning and artificial intelligence may also play a future role in predicting optimal nanocarrier formulations based on patient data and infection parameters. Precision nanomedicine for biofilm-associated infections represents an exciting frontier that could greatly enhance therapeutic outcomes while minimizing side effects and resistance development (18).

Conclusion:

Biofilm-associated infections represent a persistent and growing challenge in clinical medicine due to their inherent resistance to conventional antibiotic treatments. The structural complexity of biofilms, combined with the metabolic heterogeneity and presence of persister cells, renders standard antimicrobial approaches largely ineffective. Nanocarrier-based drug delivery systems offer a transformative strategy to overcome these barriers by facilitating targeted, sustained, and responsive delivery of therapeutic agents directly into the biofilm microenvironment. These systems enhance drug penetration, bypass diffusion limitations, and allow for co-delivery of enzymes, anti-inflammatory agents, or quorum sensing inhibitors, all of which improve therapeutic efficacy. A wide range of nanocarriers including liposomes, polymeric nanoparticles, dendrimers, and metallic systems have demonstrated promise in in vitro and preclinical studies. Despite this progress, the clinical translation of nanocarrier systems for anti-biofilm therapy remains limited by issues of biocompatibility, scalability, and regulatory uncertainty. Addressing these challenges requires a multidisciplinary approach involving material science, microbiology, pharmacology, and regulatory science. Looking ahead, the integration of personalized medicine, responsive materials, and advanced diagnostics holds great promise for creating precision-

targeted nanomedicines that can adapt to the specific characteristics of a patient's infection. As research continues to evolve, nanocarriers are poised to become a cornerstone of future anti-biofilm strategies, offering safer, more effective, and highly localized treatments for some of the most intractable infections in modern medicine.

References:

1. Fish KE, Osborn AM, Boxall J. Characterising and understanding the impact of microbial biofilms and the extracellular polymeric substance (EPS) matrix in drinking water distribution systems. Environmental science: water research & technology. 2016;2(4):614-30.
2. Almatroudi A. Biofilm resilience: Molecular mechanisms driving antibiotic resistance in clinical contexts. Biology. 2025;14(2):165.
3. Le H, Karakasyan C, Jouenne T, Le Cerf D, Dé E. Application of polymeric nanocarriers for enhancing the bioavailability of antibiotics at the target site and overcoming antimicrobial resistance. Applied sciences. 2021;11(22):10695.
4. Sauer K, Stoodley P, Goeres DM, Hall-Stoodley L, Burmølle M, Stewart PS, *et al.* The biofilm life cycle: expanding the conceptual model of biofilm formation. Nature Reviews Microbiology. 2022;20(10):608-20.
5. Mora-Gamboa MPC, Rincón-Gamboa SM, Ardila-Leal LD, Poutou-Piñales RA, Pedroza-Rodríguez AM, Quevedo-Hidalgo BE. Impact of antibiotics as waste, physical, chemical, and enzymatical degradation: Use of laccases. Molecules. 2022;27(14):4436.
6. Serrano S, Grujović MŽ, Marković KG, Barreto-Crespo MT, Semedo-Lemsaddek T. From Dormancy to Eradication: Strategies for Controlling Bacterial Persisters in Food Settings. Foods. 2025;14(6):1075.
7. Mohanta YK, Chakrabartty I, Mishra AK, Chopra H, Mahanta S, Avula SK, *et al.* Nanotechnology in combating biofilm: A smart and promising therapeutic strategy. Frontiers in Microbiology. 2023;13:1028086.
8. Maghsoudi S, Taghavi Shahraki B, Rabiee N, Fatahi Y, Dinarvand R, Tavakolizadeh M, *et al.* Burgeoning polymer nano blends for improved controlled drug release: a review. International Journal of Nanomedicine. 2020:4363-92.
9. Xie W, Zhang S, Pan F, Chen S, Zhong L, Wang J, *et al.* Nanomaterial-based ROS-mediated strategies for combating bacteria and biofilms. Journal of Materials Research. 2021;36:822-45.
10. Kowalczuk A, Trzcinska R, Trzebicka B, Müller AHE, Dworak A, Tsvetanov CB. Loading of polymer nanocarriers: Factors, mechanisms and applications. Progress in polymer science. 2014;39(1):43-86.

11. Liu X, Zhang H, Chen L, Zheng Z, Li W, Huang C, *et al.* Advanced wound healing with Stimuli-Responsive nanozymes: mechanisms, design and applications. Journal of Nanobiotechnology. 2025;23(1):479.
12. Goo E, An JH, Kang Y, Hwang I. Control of bacterial metabolism by quorum sensing. Trends in microbiology. 2015;23(9):567-76.
13. Fernando I, Lu D, Zhou Y. Interactive influence of extracellular polymeric substances (EPS) and electrolytes on the colloidal stability of silver nanoparticles. Environmental Science: Nano. 2020;7(1):186-97.
14. Wang S, Zhao Y, Breslawec AP, Liang T, Deng Z, Kuperman LL, *et al.* Strategy to combat biofilms: a focus on biofilm dispersal enzymes. npj Biofilms and Microbiomes. 2023;9(1):63.
15. Su T, Feng X, Yang J, Xu W, Liu T, Zhang M, *et al.* Polymer nanotherapeutics to correct autoimmunity. Journal of Controlled Release. 2022;343:152-74.
16. Shariati A, Noei M, Askarinia M, Khoshbayan A, Farahani A, Chegini Z. Inhibitory effect of natural compounds on quorum sensing system in Pseudomonas aeruginosa: a helpful promise for managing biofilm community. Frontiers in Pharmacology. 2024;15:1350391.
17. Crivelli B, Perteghella S, Bari E, Sorrenti M, Tripodo G, Chlapanidas T, *et al.* Silk nanoparticles: From inert supports to bioactive natural carriers for drug delivery. Soft Matter. 2018;14(4):546-57.
18. Singh R. Revolutionizing Antimicrobial Therapies Through Biofilm-Targeted Nanomedicine. Current Pharmaceutical Research. 2025:78-97.

AUTOPHAGY-BASED INTERVENTIONS IN NEURODEGENERATION: FROM BENCH TO BEDSIDE

Dilsar Gohil*, Rajesh Maheshwari
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat, India. 391760
*Corresponding author E-mail: gohildilsar9624@gmail.com

Abstract:
Autophagy is a vital intracellular degradation pathway responsible for the clearance of misfolded proteins, damaged organelles, and toxic aggregates via lysosomal processing. In neurodegenerative disorders such as Alzheimer's disease (AD) and Parkinson's disease (PD), impaired autophagic flux has been identified as a key contributor to disease pathogenesis. Genetic mutations in autophagy-related regulators like PINK1, Parkin, and LRRK2 impair mitophagy and protein clearance, leading to α-synuclein accumulation in PD. Similarly, in AD, defects in lysosomal degradation and autophagosome maturation exacerbate amyloid-β and tau deposition. Targeting autophagy pharmacologically presents a novel therapeutic strategy aimed at restoring cellular homeostasis and reducing neurotoxicity. Agents like mTOR inhibitors (e.g., rapamycin), AMPK activators (e.g., metformin), lysosomal enhancers (e.g., trehalose), and TFEB activators (e.g., curcumin) have shown promise in preclinical models. Clinically, drugs such as ambroxol and nilotinib are under investigation for their autophagy-enhancing effects in PD. Despite significant progress, challenges remain in achieving CNS bioavailability, avoiding overactivation, and tailoring therapy to disease stage. This review discusses the mechanistic basis of autophagy dysfunction in neurodegeneration, highlights pharmacological modulators under investigation, and outlines translational challenges and future directions in this rapidly evolving field.

Keywords: Autophagy, Neurodegenerative Diseases, Alzheimer's Disease, Parkinson's Disease, mTOR Inhibitors

Introduction:

Neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's disease (AD) and Parkinson's disease (PD) are marked by progressive neuronal loss and the accumulation of misfolded protein aggregates that impair cellular function. One of the key cellular mechanisms responsible for maintaining protein and organelle quality control is autophagy, a lysosome-dependent process that degrades damaged organelles, misfolded proteins, and toxic aggregates. Of the three main typesmacroautophagy, microautophagy, and chaperone-mediated autophagy macroautophagy (hereafter referred to as autophagy) is the most relevant in neurodegeneration. Defective autophagy is a common pathological hallmark in both AD and PD. In PD, mutations in autophagy-regulating genes such as PINK1, Parkin, and LRRK2 disrupt mitochondrial clearance and protein degradation,

promoting α-synuclein accumulation. Similarly, in AD, impaired autophagic flux contributes to amyloid-β and tau accumulation, further exacerbating cognitive decline. The failure of lysosomal clearance mechanisms also links autophagy dysfunction to neuroinflammation and neuronal death. Given its central role in proteostasis and neuronal survival, pharmacological modulation of autophagy offers a promising therapeutic avenue. Strategies targeting key regulators such as mTOR, AMPK, TFEB, and HDACs are currently being explored in preclinical and clinical studies to restore autophagic balance and counteract neurodegeneration [1].

Autophagy and Its Role in Neurodegeneration

Autophagy is an essential cellular process that maintains homeostasis by removing damaged organelles, misfolded proteins, and aggregated cellular debris through lysosomal degradation. In neurons—cells with long lifespans and limited regenerative capacity autophagy plays a particularly vital role in sustaining cellular health. Dysfunction of autophagy has been increasingly recognized as a central mechanism in the pathogenesis of various neurodegenerative diseases, notably Alzheimer's disease (AD) and Parkinson's disease (PD). There are three primary types of autophagy: macroautophagy, microautophagy, and chaperone-mediated autophagy (CMA). Among these, macroautophagy (commonly referred to simply as "autophagy") is the most studied and most relevant to neurodegeneration. This process involves the sequestration of cytoplasmic components within double-membraned vesicles known as autophagosomes, which subsequently fuse with lysosomes to form autolysosomes, where the cargo is enzymatically degraded and recycled [2].

Autophagy Impairment in Parkinson's Disease

Parkinson's disease (PD) is a progressive neurodegenerative disorder marked by the degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra and the accumulation of α-synuclein-containing inclusions known as Lewy bodies. Evidence suggests that impaired autophagic flux a failure in the complete autophagy cycle from autophagosome formation to lysosomal degradation contributes significantly to α-synuclein accumulation and neuronal death.

Genetic mutations in autophagy-related genes have been strongly associated with familial forms of PD:

- LRRK2 (Leucine-Rich Repeat Kinase 2) mutations impair lysosomal function and autophagosome-lysosome fusion.
- PINK1 (PTEN-induced putative kinase 1) and Parkin are key regulators of mitophagy, a specialized form of autophagy responsible for clearing damaged mitochondria. Mutations in these genes result in mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress, and neuronal apoptosis.
- ATG7 (Autophagy Related Gene 7), essential for autophagosome elongation, when disrupted, impairs autophagy initiation and leads to the accumulation of toxic protein aggregates.

Furthermore, studies have demonstrated that loss of functional autophagy in dopaminergic neurons results in progressive motor deficits and Lewy body-like inclusions, recapitulating hallmark PD pathology in animal models. Pharmacological enhancement of autophagy in PD models has shown potential in clearing α-synuclein aggregates, restoring mitochondrial function, and ameliorating neurodegeneration [3].

Autophagy Dysfunction in Alzheimer's Disease

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is the most common form of dementia and is characterized by extracellular amyloid-β (Aβ) plaques and intracellular neurofibrillary tangles composed of hyperphosphorylated tau protein. Mounting evidence suggests that autophagy plays a dual role in AD pathogenesis: both as a clearance mechanism for these pathogenic proteins and as a pathway that becomes progressively impaired during disease progression.

In early AD, autophagy may initially serve a neuroprotective role, facilitating the degradation of Aβ and tau aggregates. However, as the disease advances, the autophagy-lysosome system becomes dysfunctional:

- There is accumulation of autophagic vacuoles and immature autophagosomes in dystrophic neurites, indicative of impaired autophagic flux.
- Lysosomal degradation capacity is compromised, possibly due to cathepsin D dysfunction, disrupted acidification, or defective fusion events.
- Genetic and transcriptomic studies have identified dysregulation of autophagy-related genes, including BECN1 (Beclin 1), which is reduced in AD brains and correlates with increased Aβ deposition.

Moreover, impaired retrograde transport of autophagosomes to the soma for lysosomal degradation has been observed in AD, particularly affecting neurons with long axons, further contributing to the toxic accumulation of Aβ and tau.

Animal studies have shown that upregulating autophagy through pharmacological or genetic means can reduce amyloid burden, improve synaptic function, and enhance cognitive performance. For example, rapamycin, an mTOR inhibitor, induces autophagy and has demonstrated neuroprotective effects in AD models, including reduction of Aβ and tau pathology [4].

Interplay Between Autophagy and Neuroinflammation

In both AD and PD, defective autophagy is also linked to increased neuroinflammation. Damaged organelles and aggregated proteins act as danger-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs), activating microglia and astrocytes through pathways like TLR4 and NLRP3 inflammasomes. Properly functioning autophagy helps suppress such inflammation by degrading these DAMPs, modulating immune signaling, and promoting the clearance of apoptotic cells. Thus, autophagy serves a dual role in neurodegeneration: as a proteostasis regulator and as an anti-inflammatory pathway.

Autophagy is a critical mechanism in maintaining neuronal integrity, and its impairment is a common feature in the pathogenesis of Parkinson's and Alzheimer's disease. The inability to clear toxic protein aggregates and dysfunctional organelles contributes to progressive neuronal dysfunction and death. Genetic mutations in autophagy regulators further underline the causative link between defective autophagy and neurodegeneration.

Given the pivotal role of autophagy in both PD and AD, therapeutic strategies aimed at modulating autophagy either through pharmacological induction, genetic manipulation, or dietary interventions hold immense potential. However, the clinical application of these strategies requires careful consideration of timing, disease stage, and patient-specific factors, as excessive autophagy may lead to detrimental outcomes. Continued research into the fine-tuned regulation of autophagy and its interaction with other cellular pathways will be essential for developing effective, disease-modifying treatments for neurodegenerative disorders [5].

Therapeutic Modulation of Autophagy in Neurodegenerative Diseases

Autophagy is a critical cellular mechanism responsible for the degradation and recycling of misfolded proteins, damaged organelles, and other cytoplasmic debris. This lysosome-mediated process plays a central role in maintaining neuronal homeostasis, especially in post-mitotic cells like neurons, which are particularly vulnerable to the accumulation of toxic aggregates. In neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's disease (AD) and Parkinson's disease (PD), autophagy dysfunction contributes significantly to disease progression, primarily through the failure to clear pathogenic proteins such as amyloid-β, tau, and α-synuclein. Consequently, pharmacological modulation of autophagy has emerged as a promising therapeutic strategy aimed at restoring cellular clearance pathways and mitigating neuronal damage [6].

1. mTOR Inhibitors: Unlocking Autophagic Suppression

The mechanistic target of rapamycin (mTOR) is a central nutrient-sensing kinase that negatively regulates autophagy. Specifically, the mTOR complex 1 (mTORC1) inhibits autophagosome formation under nutrient-rich conditions. Therefore, inhibition of mTORC1 is a well-established method to induce autophagy.

Rapamycin, a macrolide antibiotic and potent mTOR inhibitor, has demonstrated promising effects in preclinical models of AD and PD. In AD, rapamycin treatment reduces tau phosphorylation, facilitates amyloid-β clearance, and improves spatial memory. In PD models, mTOR inhibition promotes the degradation of α-synuclein aggregates, alleviates mitochondrial dysfunction, and preserves dopaminergic neurons. Several analogs of rapamycin (rapalogs) such as everolimus and temsirolimus are under investigation to improve brain penetration and reduce systemic toxicity. However, long-term mTOR inhibition may impair cell growth and protein synthesis, necessitating cautious dosing and potential combination strategies to maximize benefits while minimizing adverse effects [7].

2. AMPK Activators: Boosting Energy-Driven Autophagy

Another key regulator of autophagy is AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK), a cellular energy sensor that promotes autophagy independently of mTOR. Under low-energy states (e.g., increased AMP/ATP ratio), AMPK activates ULK1, initiating autophagosome formation.

Agents such as metformin, widely used for type 2 diabetes, and AICAR, an AMP analog, are known AMPK activators. In neurodegeneration, AMPK activation enhances mitophagy the selective autophagic clearance of damaged mitochondria which is particularly beneficial in PD, where mitochondrial dysfunction is a key pathological feature.

Preclinical studies have shown that metformin reduces oxidative stress, promotes neuronal survival, and facilitates autophagic clearance of toxic proteins. Its favorable safety profile makes it a compelling candidate for repurposing in neurodegenerative disorders, although clinical validation is ongoing [8].

3. Lysosomal Enhancers: Supporting the Final Step of Clearance

While inducing autophagy is essential, the process is incomplete without effective lysosomal degradation. In many neurodegenerative conditions, lysosomal dysfunction such as impaired acidification or enzyme activity limits the degradation of autophagic cargo. Lysosomal enhancers aim to improve this final step. Trehalose, a natural disaccharide, functions both as an autophagy inducer and lysosomal enhancer. It stabilizes protein conformation, reduces aggregation, and stimulates autophagy through mTOR-independent pathways. In AD and PD models, trehalose promotes the clearance of amyloid-β, tau, and α-synuclein, leading to improved cognitive and motor outcomes. Importantly, trehalose crosses the blood-brain barrier and has shown neuroprotective effects in animal models, although its efficacy in human trials is still under investigation. It may also serve as a synergistic agent in combination with other autophagy modulators [9].

4. TFEB Activators: Master Regulators of Lysosomal Biogenesis

Transcription factor EB (TFEB) is a key regulator of autophagy and lysosome biogenesis. Upon nuclear translocation, TFEB upregulates a network of genes involved in lysosomal function, autophagosome formation, and vesicle trafficking. Enhancing TFEB activity offers a more sustainable and physiological approach to restoring the autophagy-lysosome pathway. Natural compounds such as genistein (a soy-derived isoflavone) and curcumin (a component of turmeric) have been shown to activate TFEB and improve lysosomal degradation. These agents promote the clearance of protein aggregates and attenuate neuroinflammation in AD and PD models. Additionally, pharmacological agents like 2-hydroxypropyl-β-cyclodextrin and trehalose also enhance TFEB signaling. The activation of TFEB holds promise not only for clearing toxic aggregates but also for improving lysosomal storage disorders, many of which share pathological features with neurodegenerative diseases [10].

5. HDAC Inhibitors: Bridging Epigenetics and Autophagy

Histone deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitors represent another class of compounds with autophagy-modulating potential. HDACs regulate gene expression by removing acetyl groups from histones, thereby altering chromatin structure and transcriptional activity. HDAC inhibition can upregulate autophagy-related genes and also influence the expression of proteins involved in neuronal survival and synaptic plasticity. Compounds such as vorinostat, valproic acid, and sodium butyrate have demonstrated the ability to induce autophagy and reduce amyloid and tau burden in AD models. Additionally, HDAC inhibitors modulate neuroinflammation and oxidative stress, further contributing to their neuroprotective effects [11].

However, the broad-spectrum activity of HDAC inhibitors can lead to off-target effects, underscoring the need for isoform-specific agents to enhance safety and efficacy.

Targeting the autophagy-lysosome pathway has emerged as a compelling therapeutic strategy for neurodegenerative diseases, especially Alzheimer's and Parkinson’s disease. From mTOR inhibitors and AMPK activators to TFEB enhancers and HDAC inhibitors, a diverse array of pharmacological agents is under investigation to correct the autophagic dysfunction observed in these disorders like preclinical models have provided strong evidence for the neuroprotective effects of autophagy modulation, challenges remain in translating these findings to clinical success. These include concerns about long-term safety, blood-brain barrier permeability, and optimal disease-stage-specific intervention. Future research should focus on identifying biomarkers of autophagy activity, optimizing drug delivery systems, and developing combination therapies that target multiple nodes of the autophagy pathway.

Ultimately, restoring balanced autophagy represents not only a strategy for protein clearance but also a means to revitalize cellular resilience, offering hope for disease modification in currently incurable neurodegenerative disorders [12].

Challenges and Considerations in Therapeutic Modulation of Autophagy

While autophagy has emerged as a promising therapeutic target for a range of neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer’s disease (AD) and Parkinson’s disease (PD), translating preclinical success into clinical efficacy remains a complex endeavor. Numerous pharmacological agents including mTOR inhibitors, AMPK activators, and lysosomal enhancers have shown the ability to restore autophagic flux, promote the clearance of toxic protein aggregates, and alleviate neuronal dysfunction in animal models. However, the transition from bench to bedside is fraught with scientific, clinical, and pharmacological challenges. Addressing these issues is essential for the safe and effective development of autophagy-based therapies [13].

1. Autophagy: A Double-Edged Sword

One of the fundamental concerns in targeting autophagy is the risk of overactivation, which can paradoxically lead to cell death. While autophagy is generally considered a protective mechanism, excessive or prolonged activation can result in autophagy-associated cell death, also

referred to as type II programmed cell death. This is especially relevant in the brain, where neurons have limited regenerative capacity.

In the early stages of neurodegenerative diseases, enhancing autophagy may help by clearing toxic proteins and supporting mitochondrial health. However, in advanced stages, where extensive neuronal damage and metabolic compromise are present, further autophagic stress can lead to energy depletion and exacerbate cell death. Therefore, therapeutic modulation must be tightly regulated, ideally using dose-dependent and time-specific protocols tailored to disease progression [14].

2. Blood–Brain Barrier (BBB) Permeability

A major pharmacokinetic challenge in treating central nervous system (CNS) disorders is the blood–brain barrier (BBB) a selective barrier that limits the entry of most molecules into the brain parenchyma. Many promising autophagy inducers, such as rapamycin, trehalose, and HDAC inhibitors, have limited BBB permeability, thereby reducing their bioavailability in neuronal tissues. Some compounds that do cross the BBB, like metformin, have pleiotropic effects and may not offer the specificity required for targeted autophagic modulation. Novel delivery strategies such as nanoparticle carriers, liposomes, exosomes, or chemical modifications (e.g., prodrugs or conjugates) are being explored to enhance CNS targeting. Additionally, intranasal delivery is gaining interest as a non-invasive route that bypasses the BBB via the olfactory and trigeminal pathways [15].

3. Disease Stage-Specific Considerations

Neurodegenerative diseases are progressive in nature, with distinct pathophysiological phases. In the prodromal or early stages, cellular systems including autophagy are still functionally responsive, allowing pharmacological modulation to potentially reverse or slow disease progression. In contrast, late-stage disease is characterized by widespread neuronal death, glial scarring, and loss of network connectivity, making recovery more difficult.

Enhancing autophagy in early PD or AD may promote the clearance of α-synuclein, amyloid-β, and hyperphosphorylated tau, preventing their aggregation and associated toxicity. However, in advanced stages, autophagy inducers could overstimulate already stressed neurons, leading to unintended consequences such as oxidative stress, excessive mitophagy, or autophagic exhaustion. This underscores the need for biomarkers that can accurately define disease stage and monitor autophagy activity. Biomarkers such as LC3-II levels, p62/SQSTM1 accumulation, and lysosomal enzyme profiles in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) or imaging-based approaches (e.g., PET tracers for autophagic markers) may help guide patient selection and dosing strategies in clinical trials [16].

4. Lack of Selectivity and Off-Target Effects

Most autophagy modulators used in preclinical studies like rapamycin, valproic acid, or curcumin affect multiple cellular pathways beyond autophagy. While this pleiotropy can

sometimes be beneficial, it also raises concerns about off-target effects and unpredictable toxicity, especially with long-term use in chronic conditions like AD or PD.

For instance, mTOR inhibitors can suppress immune function, impair wound healing, and cause metabolic disturbances. Similarly, HDAC inhibitors may influence gene expression widely, leading to unwanted epigenetic reprogramming.

There is a growing need to develop highly selective autophagy modulators that target specific nodes in the autophagy pathway such as ULK1 kinase, Beclin 1, or TFEB to reduce side effects and improve therapeutic precision [17].

5. Inter-individual Variability and Chronotherapy

Autophagy is regulated by circadian rhythms, and its efficiency varies based on age, sex, metabolic state, and genetic background. Elderly individuals the primary demographic for AD and PD often exhibit baseline autophagy deficits, complicating treatment response. Personalized approaches based on genomic profiling, chronotype, and metabolic status may be necessary for optimizing outcomes.

Incorporating chronotherapeutic strategies, where drug administration is timed according to circadian fluctuations in autophagy gene expression, could improve efficacy and reduce toxicity. However, such approaches require additional clinical research and infrastructure.

Although the modulation of autophagy holds considerable promise as a therapeutic approach for neurodegenerative diseases, multiple challenges must be addressed to ensure its clinical viability. These include the risk of autophagy-induced cytotoxicity, poor BBB permeability, stage-specific effects, lack of drug selectivity, and individual variability in response. Overcoming these barriers will require multidisciplinary collaboration, including advances in neuropharmacology, nanotechnology, biomarker development, and precision medicine.

Future research must focus on safe, targeted, and regulated activation of autophagy, supported by real-time monitoring and stratified clinical trial designs. Only through such integrative efforts can we unlock the full therapeutic potential of autophagy in combating neurodegeneration [18].

Conclusion and Future Perspectives

The therapeutic potential of autophagy modulation in neurodegenerative diseases such as Parkinson's disease (PD) and Alzheimer's disease (AD) has advanced beyond the experimental stage, with several compounds undergoing clinical and preclinical evaluation. The transition from bench to bedside is being cautiously explored through both repurposed drugs and natural compounds, aimed at restoring autophagic flux, enhancing lysosomal function, and reducing the pathological burden of protein aggregates.

Among the most promising candidates are rapamycin and its analogs. As potent inhibitors of mTORC1, these compounds induce autophagy by lifting its suppression on autophagosome initiation. Everolimus, a rapamycin derivative, has been tested in early-phase clinical trials for both PD and AD. In PD, everolimus has shown potential in promoting α-synuclein degradation and protecting dopaminergic neurons. In AD, mTOR inhibition correlates with reduced tau

pathology and amyloid-β accumulation, leading to improved synaptic function in animal models. However, challenges remain regarding blood–brain barrier penetration, immunosuppression, and long-term safety, necessitating careful optimization in dosing and patient selection.Another notable compound under investigation is ambroxol, traditionally used as a mucolytic agent in respiratory disorders. Ambroxol has garnered interest for its ability to enhance the activity of glucocerebrosidase (GCase), a lysosomal enzyme involved in the degradation of glycolipids. Mutations in the GBA gene, which encodes GCase, are a significant genetic risk factor for PD. By improving GCase function, ambroxol indirectly enhances lysosomal efficiency and autophagy, promoting the clearance of toxic α-synuclein aggregates. Clinical trials in PD patients with GBA mutations have shown that ambroxol crosses the blood–brain barrier, increases GCase activity in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), and may slow motor and cognitive decline.

Nilotinib, a tyrosine kinase inhibitor originally developed for chronic myeloid leukemia, has also emerged as a potential autophagy enhancer. It is thought to promote the degradation of misfolded proteins by enhancing endosomal and autophagic clearance pathways. In small-scale studies of PD, nilotinib was found to increase dopamine metabolite levels and reduce α-synuclein burden. However, further randomized controlled trials are needed to confirm its efficacy and evaluate its safety profile for long-term use in neurological conditions.

In addition to synthetic drugs, several natural compounds have demonstrated autophagy-inducing and neuroprotective properties in preclinical studies. Resveratrol, a polyphenol found in grapes, activates SIRT1 and AMPK, thereby stimulating autophagy and reducing oxidative stress. Spermidine, a naturally occurring polyamine, has been shown to extend lifespan in model organisms through autophagy activation and is currently being studied in the context of cognitive aging. Curcumin, derived from turmeric, enhances TFEB activation, promotes lysosomal biogenesis, and reduces amyloid aggregation.

These compounds offer a multi-targeted approach with lower toxicity profiles, though challenges such as low bioavailability and variability in clinical response remain to be addressed. Future research must focus on optimizing formulations, delivery mechanisms, and biomarker-based patient stratification to translate these findings into effective therapies.

References:

1. Mizushima N, Levine B. Autophagy in human diseases. N Engl J Med. 2020;383(16):1564–76.
2. Menzies FM, Fleming A, Rubinsztein DC. Compromised autophagy and neurodegenerative diseases. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2015;16(6):345–57.
3. Komatsu M, Waguri S, Chiba T, *et al.* Loss of autophagy in the central nervous system causes neurodegeneration in mice. Nature. 2006;441(7095):880–4.
4. Nixon RA. The role of autophagy in neurodegenerative disease. Nat Med. 2013;19(8):983–97.

5. Chu CT. Mechanisms of selective autophagy and mitophagy: Implications for neurodegenerative diseases. Neurobiol Dis. 2019;122:23–34.
6. Wong YC, Holzbaur ELF. Autophagosome dynamics in neurodegeneration at a glance. J Cell Sci. 2015;128(7):1259–67.
7. Pan T, Kondo S, Le W, *et al.* The role of autophagy-lysosome pathway in neurodegeneration associated with Parkinson's disease. Brain. 2008;131(Pt 8):1969–78.
8. Spilman P, Podlutskaya N, Hart MJ, *et al.* Inhibition of mTOR by rapamycin abolishes cognitive deficits and reduces amyloid-β levels in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. PLoS One. 2010;5(4):e9979.
9. Malagelada C, Jin ZH, Greene LA. RTP801 is induced in Parkinson’s disease and mediates neuron death by inhibiting mTOR signaling. J Neurosci. 2008;28(53):14363–71.
10. Moors TE, Hoozemans JJM, Ingrassia A, *et al.* Therapeutic potential of autophagy-enhancing agents in Parkinson's disease. Mol Neurodegener. 2017;12(1):11.
11. Zhuang X, Zhao C, Gao J, *et al.* Trehalose ameliorates Alzheimer’s disease pathology by enhancing autophagy in APP/PS1 mice. Aging Dis. 2020;11(5):1091–1102.
12. Settembre C, Fraldi A, Medina DL, *et al.* Signals from the lysosome: A control centre for cellular clearance and energy metabolism. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2013;14(5):283–96.
13. Song JX, Malampati S, Zeng Y, *et al.* AMPK activation reduces α-synuclein accumulation and promotes neuroprotection in models of Parkinson’s disease. Aging Cell. 2018;17(4):e12719.
14. Mullard A. Ambroxol repurposing in Parkinson disease gets a boost. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2020;19(6):385.
15. Pagan FL, Hebron ML, Wilmarth B, *et al.* Nilotinib effects on safety, tolerability, and potential biomarkers in Parkinson disease: A phase 1b study. JAMA Neurol. 2016;73(7):714–20.
16. Guo M, Wang J, Zhao Y, *et al.* Curcumin activates autophagy and attenuates oxidative damage in Alzheimer’s disease models. Phytother Res. 2020;34(8):2016–2028.
17. Madeo F, Eisenberg T, Pietrocola F, *et al.* Spermidine in health and disease. Science. 2018;359(6374):eaan2788.
18. Redmann M, Benavides GA, Wani WY, *et al.* Methods for assessing mitochondrial function in neurons and neurodegenerative disease models. Cell Calcium. 2017;63:55–70.

CO-DELIVERY SYSTEMS FOR MULTIDRUG-RESISTANT INFECTIONS

Chitrali Talele[1], Dipali Talele*[2], Piyush Sadhu[1], Nirmal Shah[1]

[1]Department of Pharmacy,

Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat, India 391760

[2]School of Pharmacy,

Vishwakarma University, Survey No 2,3,4 Laxmi Nagar, Kondhwa, Budruk, Pune 411048.

*Corresponding author E-mail: dipalitalele93@gmail.com

Abstract:

Multidrug-resistant (MDR) infections represent one of the most pressing challenges in global healthcare, driven by the overuse and misuse of antibiotics and the rapid adaptation of microbial pathogens. Conventional monotherapy approaches often fail to eradicate resistant strains, emphasizing the urgent need for novel therapeutic strategies. Co-delivery systems, which combine multiple therapeutic agents within a single carrier platform, have emerged as a promising approach to overcome microbial resistance. These systems enable the simultaneous or sequential release of antibiotics, adjuvants, efflux pump inhibitors, quorum sensing disruptors, and biofilm-degrading enzymes, enhancing therapeutic efficacy while minimizing resistance development. Nanocarriers such as liposomes, polymeric nanoparticles, dendrimers, and metal-based systems have been extensively explored for co-delivery applications, offering advantages such as targeted delivery, enhanced bioavailability, and reduced toxicity. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of various co-delivery platforms designed to combat MDR infections, discussing their design principles, mechanisms of action, and therapeutic outcomes. It also highlights recent advancements in stimuli-responsive delivery systems and discusses the translational challenges and future prospects of these innovative technologies in clinical settings.

Keywords: Antibiotic Resistance, Biofilm Disruption, Co-Delivery Systems, Multidrug-Resistant Infections, Nanocarriers

1. Introduction to Multidrug Resistant Infections

The emergence and global spread of multidrug resistant infections represent one of the gravest threats to modern medicine and public health. Multidrug resistant organisms, frequently referred to as “superbugs,” are bacterial strains that have acquired the ability to withstand the effects of multiple antimicrobial agents traditionally used to treat infections. The rise of these pathogens compromises the effectiveness of standard therapeutic regimens, leaving limited or no viable treatment options, particularly in immunocompromised patients and those with chronic infections. Globally, the World Health Organization has recognized antimicrobial resistance as one of the top ten public health threats facing humanity, with projections suggesting that drug resistant infections could claim as many as 10 million lives annually by 2050 if left unaddressed.

The origins of multidrug resistance are multifactorial, involving inappropriate prescription practices, over-the-counter availability of antibiotics without professional oversight, poor infection control measures in healthcare settings, widespread agricultural use of antimicrobials for growth promotion, and the natural evolutionary drive of microbial populations to survive hostile environments. Infections caused by multidrug resistant bacteria such as methicillin resistant Staphylococcus aureus, vancomycin resistant Enterococci, carbapenem resistant Enterobacteriaceae, multidrug resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa, and Acinetobacter baumannii have become commonplace in hospitals worldwide. These organisms are notorious for causing hospital-acquired infections, including pneumonia, bloodstream infections, urinary tract infections, and wound infections, particularly in critically ill patients in intensive care units.

Adding complexity to the clinical management of multidrug resistant infections is the bacteria's ability to form biofilms, structured communities of microbial cells surrounded by a self-produced extracellular polymeric matrix. Biofilms confer physical and chemical protection, limiting the diffusion of antibiotics and shielding bacteria from host immune defenses. Infections associated with biofilm formation, such as prosthetic joint infections, catheter-associated infections, and chronic lung infections in cystic fibrosis patients, are notoriously difficult to eradicate using conventional antimicrobial therapies. Furthermore, biofilms enable bacteria to persist in dormant states with reduced metabolic activity, further decreasing their susceptibility to antibiotics.

The global crisis of antimicrobial resistance has prompted an urgent call for innovative therapeutic strategies beyond conventional antibiotic monotherapy. Co-delivery systems, which utilize advanced drug delivery platforms to simultaneously transport multiple therapeutic agents, have emerged as a promising approach. By combining antibiotics with resistance-modulating agents such as efflux pump inhibitors, biofilm-disrupting enzymes, and quorum sensing blockers within a single delivery system, co-delivery approaches aim to restore the efficacy of existing antibiotics, reduce bacterial survival mechanisms, and improve treatment outcomes. These advanced systems, often built upon nanocarrier technologies, enable targeted, controlled, and stimuli-responsive drug release, enhancing the concentration of active agents at the infection site while minimizing systemic toxicity. As the threat of multidrug resistant infections continues to escalate, the development and clinical translation of co-delivery systems represent a critical frontier in the fight against antimicrobial resistance.

2. Antimicrobial Resistance Mechanisms

The molecular and cellular mechanisms underlying antimicrobial resistance are diverse and highly sophisticated, reflecting the evolutionary adaptability of microbial populations under selective pressure. Antimicrobial resistance mechanisms can be broadly categorized into four principal strategies: modification of drug targets, enzymatic inactivation of antibiotics, reduction of intracellular drug accumulation, and adaptive resistance through biofilm formation and metabolic alterations.

One of the most fundamental mechanisms is the alteration of the antibiotic's molecular target. This can occur through point mutations in chromosomal genes encoding the target protein, leading to structural changes that diminish the drug's binding affinity. For example, mutations in DNA gyrase and topoisomerase IV reduce susceptibility to fluoroquinolones, while alterations in penicillin binding proteins confer resistance to beta-lactam antibiotics. Additionally, some bacteria acquire alternative pathways or enzymes that bypass the antibiotic's target altogether, as seen in the acquisition of dihydrofolate reductase variants conferring resistance to trimethoprim.

Another prominent mechanism is the enzymatic degradation or modification of antibiotics. The production of beta-lactamases, including extended-spectrum beta-lactamases (ESBLs) and carbapenemases, is a well-documented example where bacteria enzymatically hydrolyze the beta-lactam ring structure, rendering the antibiotic inactive. Aminoglycoside modifying enzymes, such as acetyltransferases, phosphorylases, and adenyltransferases, similarly inactivate aminoglycosides through covalent modifications. These enzymes can be chromosomally encoded or carried on plasmids and transposons, facilitating their rapid dissemination among bacterial populations.

Efflux pumps constitute another critical resistance mechanism, actively exporting antibiotics out of the bacterial cell to prevent them from reaching their intracellular targets. These transport proteins, which span the bacterial inner and outer membranes in Gram-negative bacteria, belong to families such as the resistance nodulation division, major facilitator superfamily, and ATP binding cassette transporters. Efflux pumps can confer resistance to a wide range of structurally unrelated antibiotics, contributing to the multidrug resistance phenotype. The overexpression of efflux pumps not only decreases antibiotic accumulation but also reduces bacterial susceptibility to disinfectants and biocides.

Biofilm formation represents a highly adaptive mechanism of resistance, providing a physical and physiological barrier against antimicrobial agents. Within a biofilm, bacteria produce an extracellular polymeric matrix composed of polysaccharides, proteins, and extracellular DNA, which limits antibiotic penetration and creates diffusion gradients. Furthermore, bacteria within biofilms exhibit phenotypic heterogeneity, with subpopulations entering dormant or slow-growing states where many antibiotics that target actively dividing cells are ineffective. Biofilm associated resistance is particularly problematic in chronic infections and on the surfaces of medical devices, where it leads to recurrent and persistent infections.

Adaptive resistance, a transient and reversible form of resistance, also plays a crucial role. In response to environmental stresses, such as nutrient limitation or exposure to sublethal antibiotic concentrations, bacteria can activate stress response pathways, upregulate efflux pumps, and modulate membrane permeability to transiently enhance their survival. Quorum sensing systems, which regulate gene expression in response to cell population density, further contribute to

adaptive resistance by controlling biofilm formation, virulence factor production, and horizontal gene transfer.

3. Rationale and Design of Co-Delivery Systems

The increasing complexity of multidrug resistant infections necessitates therapeutic strategies that can target multiple bacterial defense mechanisms simultaneously. Co-delivery systems are designed to transport two or more therapeutic agents within a single carrier platform, thereby enhancing treatment efficacy through synergistic or complementary mechanisms of action. Unlike conventional combination therapy, where drugs are administered separately and may face different pharmacokinetic and biodistribution challenges, co-delivery systems ensure that the therapeutic agents reach the infection site together, at optimized ratios, and at the same time. This synchronized delivery improves drug interactions and reduces the likelihood of subtherapeutic concentrations that can promote further resistance. The design of co-delivery systems involves careful consideration of the physicochemical compatibility of the drugs, their release profiles, and the characteristics of the carrier. Nanocarriers such as liposomes, polymeric nanoparticles, dendrimers, and metal-based platforms have been widely explored for this purpose due to their ability to encapsulate multiple drugs, protect them from premature degradation, and enable controlled or stimuli-responsive release. Furthermore, surface modifications with targeting ligands can direct these systems to specific bacterial cells or infection sites, enhancing therapeutic precision while minimizing off-target effects. Co-delivery systems may combine antibiotics with adjuvants like efflux pump inhibitors, biofilm-disrupting enzymes, or quorum sensing blockers, thus targeting multiple resistance pathways simultaneously. This approach not only enhances antibacterial efficacy but also reduces the required dose of individual drugs, lowering the risk of toxicity and minimizing the selective pressure that drives resistance evolution. Therefore, the rational design of co-delivery platforms represents a promising strategy to restore the efficacy of existing antibiotics and address the urgent clinical need for effective treatments against multidrug resistant infections.

4. Nanocarrier Platforms for Co-Delivery

Nanocarrier-based drug delivery systems have revolutionized the treatment of multidrug resistant infections by providing a versatile platform for the co-delivery of multiple therapeutic agents. These nanocarriers protect encapsulated drugs from premature degradation, facilitate their controlled release, and enhance their accumulation at the infection site, thereby overcoming many limitations of conventional antibiotic therapy. Among the most extensively studied nanocarriers are polymeric nanoparticles, which are formed from biodegradable and biocompatible polymers such as poly lactic-co-glycolic acid, chitosan, and polycaprolactone. These nanoparticles offer high drug loading capacity, tunable surface properties, and sustained drug release profiles. Liposomes, another widely used platform, are spherical vesicles composed of phospholipid bilayers capable of encapsulating both hydrophilic and lipophilic drugs. Their

biocompatibility and structural similarity to biological membranes enable efficient fusion with bacterial cell membranes, facilitating drug release directly into the pathogen. Dendrimers are highly branched, nanosized macromolecules with well-defined structures and multiple surface functional groups that allow for the conjugation or encapsulation of diverse therapeutic agents. Due to their precise architecture, dendrimers can facilitate multivalent interactions with bacterial surfaces, enhancing targeting specificity. Micelles, formed by the self-assembly of amphiphilic molecules, provide another platform for encapsulating hydrophobic drugs and have shown potential for co-delivery strategies where solubility enhancement is required. In addition, metal-based and hybrid nanocarriers, such as silver or gold nanoparticles functionalized with polymers or biomolecules, exhibit intrinsic antimicrobial properties, which complement the action of the delivered antibiotics. These metallic systems can disrupt bacterial membranes and generate reactive oxygen species, further potentiating the antimicrobial effect. Recent advances have also explored hybrid nanocarriers that integrate the advantages of multiple carrier types, offering synergistic properties such as enhanced stability, targeted delivery, and stimuli responsiveness. Functionalization of these nanocarriers with targeting ligands such as antibodies, peptides, or polysaccharides can improve their specificity towards bacterial cells or infection sites, thereby minimizing systemic toxicity and enhancing treatment outcomes. Collectively, these nanocarrier platforms represent a powerful toolkit for the development of advanced co-delivery systems aimed at combating multidrug resistant infections.

5. Therapeutic Combinations in Co-Delivery

The success of co-delivery systems in managing multidrug resistant infections largely depends on the strategic selection of therapeutic combinations that can effectively disrupt bacterial survival mechanisms. Traditional antibiotic monotherapies often fail against resistant pathogens due to mechanisms such as drug efflux, enzymatic degradation, and biofilm formation. Therefore, co-delivery strategies typically integrate antibiotics with functional adjuvants that target these resistance pathways, creating a synergistic or additive therapeutic effect. One of the most explored combinations involves antibiotics with efflux pump inhibitors. Efflux pumps are transport proteins that actively expel antibiotics from bacterial cells, reducing their intracellular concentration below therapeutic levels. Co-delivery of efflux pump inhibitors alongside antibiotics prevents drug expulsion, thereby restoring the antibiotic's potency. For example, the co-delivery of ciprofloxacin with phenylalanine-arginine beta-naphthylamide (PAβN), an efflux pump inhibitor, has shown remarkable success in overcoming resistance in Gram-negative bacteria.

Another promising approach involves the co-delivery of antibiotics with biofilm-degrading agents. Biofilms are dense microbial communities embedded in an extracellular polymeric matrix that restricts antibiotic penetration and promotes chronic infection. Enzymes such as DNase I, dispersin B, and proteases can degrade the biofilm matrix, exposing the underlying

bacteria to the antibiotic. Co-delivery platforms that combine these enzymes with antibiotics like vancomycin or tobramycin have demonstrated improved disruption of biofilms and enhanced bacterial eradication. Furthermore, the combination of antibiotics with quorum sensing inhibitors represents an innovative approach to attenuate bacterial virulence and biofilm formation. Quorum sensing is a bacterial communication system that regulates gene expression related to pathogenicity and resistance. Agents such as furanones or N-acyl homoserine lactone analogs, when co-delivered with antibiotics, interfere with quorum sensing pathways, rendering bacteria more susceptible to treatment.

Additionally, antimicrobial peptides, which possess broad-spectrum bactericidal activity, are being co-delivered with antibiotics to exploit their membrane-disrupting abilities. These peptides destabilize bacterial membranes, increasing permeability and facilitating antibiotic entry. Some systems also explore the co-delivery of dual antibiotics with complementary mechanisms of action, such as the combination of rifampicin and colistin, to achieve synergistic bacterial killing and minimize the likelihood of resistance development. The choice of drug pairs must consider pharmacodynamic compatibility, drug release profiles, and potential toxicity to ensure therapeutic success.

Ultimately, the design of co-delivery systems requires a careful balance between achieving synergistic therapeutic effects and maintaining the stability and bioavailability of both agents. Nanocarriers facilitate this by protecting sensitive drugs, enabling controlled and site-specific release, and ensuring that therapeutic agents reach the infection site at optimal concentrations. These combination strategies not only enhance the immediate killing of resistant bacteria but also reduce the selective pressure that drives the emergence of new resistant strains, offering a sustainable approach to managing multidrug resistant infections.

6. Stimuli Responsive Co-Delivery Systems

Stimuli responsive co-delivery systems represent a significant advancement in the field of targeted drug delivery for multidrug resistant infections, offering precise control over drug release in response to specific environmental triggers. These smart delivery systems are designed to remain stable during circulation and selectively release their therapeutic payload at the site of infection, where distinct physiological or pathological conditions prevail. One of the most widely exploited triggers is pH sensitivity. Infected tissues, as well as intracellular compartments such as phagosomes and lysosomes, often exhibit an acidic environment. pH-responsive nanocarriers are engineered using acid-labile linkages or ionizable polymers that destabilize or degrade under acidic conditions, leading to the controlled release of encapsulated drugs specifically within the infection microenvironment. This approach ensures minimal drug leakage in healthy tissues and enhances the local concentration of therapeutics where they are most needed.

Another important trigger is enzyme responsiveness. Bacterial infections are frequently associated with the overexpression of specific enzymes, such as lipases, proteases, or matrix

metalloproteinases. Enzyme-sensitive delivery systems incorporate cleavable linkers or enzyme-degradable polymers that are specifically broken down by these bacterial or host-derived enzymes, facilitating the localized release of antibiotics and adjuvants. This strategy not only enhances drug release at the infection site but also exploits the enzymatic activity of the bacteria as a self-triggering mechanism, making the system highly selective and efficient.

Redox responsive systems are also gaining attention, particularly for targeting intracellular infections. Infected cells and bacterial biofilms often exhibit elevated levels of reducing agents such as glutathione or reactive oxygen species. Redox-sensitive nanocarriers incorporate disulfide bonds or other redox-cleavable linkers that respond to these redox imbalances, enabling the release of drugs within bacterial cells or biofilms. Additionally, temperature responsive systems have been explored, utilizing polymers that undergo phase transitions at slightly elevated temperatures commonly found in inflamed or infected tissues.

Beyond single stimuli, recent innovations have led to the development of multi-stimuli responsive systems that integrate two or more triggers, such as pH and enzyme responsiveness, to achieve even greater specificity and control. These platforms allow for hierarchical drug release, where an initial stimulus triggers the exposure of the carrier to a secondary stimulus, resulting in finely tuned therapeutic action. The integration of such smart release mechanisms within co-delivery systems ensures that antibiotics and their adjuvants are released in a coordinated manner, maximizing synergistic effects and minimizing systemic exposure.

Stimuli responsive co-delivery systems represent a paradigm shift in the treatment of multidrug resistant infections, enabling precision targeting of complex infection microenvironments. By coupling therapeutic combinations with smart release technologies, these systems hold the potential to significantly improve treatment outcomes, reduce side effects, and limit the emergence of further resistance.

8. Future Prospects

The future of co-delivery systems for multidrug resistant infections lies in the advancement of precision therapeutics that integrate smart nanotechnology, molecular biology, and computational design. One promising direction is the development of personalized co-delivery therapies tailored to individual patient microbiomes, infection types, and resistance profiles. By leveraging rapid diagnostic tools and genomic sequencing, clinicians could identify the resistance mechanisms present in a patient's infection and select an optimal combination of therapeutics delivered via a customized nanocarrier platform. Artificial intelligence and machine learning algorithms are expected to play a critical role in the rational design of co-delivery systems, enabling the optimization of drug combinations, release kinetics, and carrier architecture to achieve maximal synergistic effects with minimal toxicity. In parallel, there is growing interest in designing co-delivery carriers using sustainable and biodegradable materials, addressing both clinical efficacy and environmental safety concerns. Natural polymers, green

synthesis methods, and waste-minimized manufacturing processes are likely to become integral to the production of next-generation nanocarriers. Additionally, the incorporation of immunomodulatory agents into co-delivery systems presents an exciting opportunity to harness the host immune response alongside antimicrobial therapy, potentially improving bacterial clearance and preventing infection recurrence. Future research will also focus on overcoming translational barriers, such as ensuring scalability of carrier synthesis, achieving regulatory approval, and demonstrating safety and efficacy in large-scale clinical trials. Moreover, implantable and injectable depot systems that enable long-term, localized co-delivery of therapeutics are expected to expand the treatment options for chronic and deep-seated infections. As the field progresses, interdisciplinary collaborations between microbiologists, materials scientists, clinicians, and pharmaceutical engineers will be essential to translate these innovative co-delivery strategies from the laboratory to bedside applications, ultimately transforming the management of multidrug resistant infections.

Conclusion:

Multidrug resistant infections continue to pose a significant global health threat, undermining the efficacy of conventional antibiotics and challenging healthcare systems worldwide. Co-delivery systems have emerged as a powerful therapeutic approach capable of addressing the multifactorial nature of antimicrobial resistance. By enabling the simultaneous delivery of antibiotics with efflux pump inhibitors, biofilm-degrading enzymes, quorum sensing blockers, or other adjuvants, these systems target multiple resistance pathways and enhance therapeutic outcomes. Nanocarrier platforms such as liposomes, polymeric nanoparticles, dendrimers, and metal-based systems provide versatile vehicles for co-delivery, offering protection of therapeutic agents, controlled release, and targeted delivery to infection sites. The incorporation of stimuli responsive mechanisms further refines these systems, allowing for precise drug release in response to environmental cues characteristic of infection microenvironments. Despite significant preclinical advancements, challenges remain in the clinical translation of co-delivery systems, including large-scale production, long-term safety, and regulatory approval. Future research efforts should focus on developing personalized and environmentally sustainable delivery platforms, integrating advanced computational tools for system design, and conducting robust clinical evaluations. Overall, co-delivery systems represent a transformative strategy in the fight against multidrug resistant infections, with the potential to restore the effectiveness of existing antibiotics and reduce the global burden of antimicrobial resistance.

References:

1. Ventola, C. L. (2015). The antibiotic resistance crisis: part 1: causes and threats. *Pharmacy and Therapeutics*, 40(4), 277–283.
2. Fair, R. J., & Tor, Y. (2014). Antibiotics and bacterial resistance in the 21st century. *Perspectives in Medicinal Chemistry*, 6, 25–64. https://doi.org/10.4137/PMC.S14459

3. Mulani, M. S., Kamble, E. E., Kumkar, S. N., Tawre, M. S., & Pardesi, K. R. (2019). Emerging strategies to combat ESKAPE pathogens in the era of antimicrobial resistance: A review. *Frontiers in Microbiology*, 10, 539. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2019.00539
4. Zhang, L., Pornpattananangkul, D., Hu, C. M., & Huang, C. M. (2010). Development of nanoparticles for antimicrobial drug delivery. *Current Medicinal Chemistry*, 17(6), 585–594. https://doi.org/10.2174/092986710790416290
5. Singh, R., & Lillard, J. W. (2009). Nanoparticle-based targeted drug delivery. *Experimental and Molecular Pathology*, 86(3), 215–223. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yexmp.2008.12.004
6. Li, X., Robinson, S. M., Gupta, A., Saha, K., Jiang, Z., Moyano, D. F., Sahar, A., Riley, M. A., & Rotello, V. M. (2014). Functional gold nanoparticles as potent antimicrobial agents against multi-drug-resistant bacteria. *ACS Nano*, 8(10), 10682–10686. https://doi.org/10.1021/nn5042625
7. Pang, Z., Raudonis, R., Glick, B. R., Lin, T. J., & Cheng, Z. (2019). Antibiotic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa: mechanisms and alternative therapeutic strategies. *Biotechnology Advances*, 37(1), 177–192. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biotechadv.2018.11.013
8. Wang, J., Wang, L., Zhang, Y., Zhuang, X., & Xu, X. (2022). Enzyme-responsive nanocarriers for antibacterial therapy. *Journal of Materials Chemistry B*, 10(1), 1–19. https://doi.org/10.1039/d1tb01895f
9. Xiong, M. H., Bao, Y., Yang, X. Z., Zhu, Y. H., Wang, J. (2014). Delivery of antibiotics with polymeric particles. *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews*, 78, 63–76. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.addr.2014.07.005
10. Brown, E. D., & Wright, G. D. (2016). Antibacterial drug discovery in the resistance era. *Nature*, 529(7586), 336–343. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature17042
11. Shaaban, M. I., Shaker, M. A., Mady, F. M., & Khalil, R. M. (2020). Co-delivery of levofloxacin and thymol using polymeric nanoparticles to overcome resistance in Gram-negative bacteria. *Scientific Reports*, 10, 3079. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-020-59991-0
12. Lin, L., Xu, Y., Wang, X., & Luo, Q. (2023). Stimuli-responsive drug delivery systems for combating bacterial infections. *Journal of Controlled Release*, 353, 73–91. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jconrel.2023.03.034
13. Hurdle, J. G., O'Neill, A. J., Chopra, I., & Lee, R. E. (2011). Targeting bacterial membrane function: an underexploited mechanism for treating persistent infections. *Nature Reviews Microbiology*, 9(1), 62–75. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro2474

Bhumi Publishing, India
July 2025

HERBAL REMEDIES FOR TREATMENT OF URINARY TRACT INFECTION

Krupa Joshi*, Dhanya B. Sen, Dillip Kumar Dash, Shivkant Patel
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat- 391760, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: krupaj356@gmail.com

Abstract:
Among the most prevalent bacterial illnesses are urinary tract infections (UTIs), which particularly affect women because of anatomical and physiological variations. Escherichia coli, the main causal agent, ascends the urinary tract and causes symptoms that range from increased frequency and dysuria to serious disorders including urosepsis and pyelonephritis. Poor hygiene, sexual activity, catheter use, dehydration, and hormonal fluctuations are some of the risk factors that lead to UTI formation and recurrence. Antibiotics are usually used in conventional treatment, but growing concerns about antibiotic resistance have increased interest in alternative and preventive methods, including herbal medicine. This chapter examines lifestyle factors that contribute to recurrent UTIs and provides evidence-based information on common medicinal plants, such as *Vaccinium macrocarpon*, *Boerhavia diffusa*, *Crataeva nurvala*, *Tinospora cordifolia*, *Asparagus racemosus*, and *Tribulus terrestris*. With their diuretic, anti-inflammatory, antibacterial, and antiurolithiatic qualities, these herbs may help prevent and treat urinary tract infections. More thorough human trials are required to establish standardized dosing, safety, and long-term effects, even though encouraging pre-clinical and sparse clinical data indicate their efficacy. A comprehensive strategy to lessen the burden of UTIs may involve lifestyle changes along with the judicious use of herbs.

Keywords: UTI, Life Style, Herbs, Bacterial Illnesses

Introduction:

Urinary tract infections (UTIs) are prevalent infectious disorders that can result in significant costs and morbidity. A frequent bacterial illness, urinary tract infections (UTIs) can damage the kidneys, ureters, bladder, and urethra, among other parts of the urinary system. Escherichia coli (E. coli), a bacteria found in the gastrointestinal tract, is the main cause of it [1]. Because of their shorter urethras, which make it easier for germs to enter the bladder, women are more likely to get UTIs [2]. Serious side effects include sepsis and kidney infections (pyelonephritis) can result from untreated UTIs [3]. Women are more susceptible to UTIs due to anatomical variations since germs can more easily migrate to the bladder through their shorter urethra. If untreated, UTI symptoms can range from minor dysuria and increased frequency of urination to serious consequences including pyelonephritis and urosepsis. Recurrent infections and long-term consequences can be avoided with prompt diagnosis and proper antibiotic therapy.

Depending on the location and intensity of the infection, UTIs can present with a range of symptoms [4]. A burning feeling when urinating is one of the most typical symptoms, and it is brought on by irritation and inflammation of the lining of the urinary system. Additionally, people may feel the need to urinate frequently, even when their bladder is empty, which can cause pain all day long. When bacteria and pus cells are present, the urine may seem murky, dark, or smell strongly. Women frequently experience pelvic pain, particularly if the infection advances to the bladder. Fever and chills are signs of a more dangerous illness that needs to be treated right away in severe cases, especially those involving the kidneys.

The chance of getting a UTI is increased by a number of factors. Gender is important because women are more vulnerable because of structural variations, especially the shorter urethra, which makes it easier for bacteria to enter the bladder. Another significant element is sexual activity, since frequent sexual contact raises the risk of bacterial transmission. Additionally, bacterial contamination from poor hygiene habits can increase the risk of infection. Urine retention is more common in people with anomalies of the urinary tract, such as blockages or structural deformities, which provides the perfect conditions for the growth of germs. Catheters increase the risk of infection by introducing foreign items into the urinary tract. Furthermore, hormonal changes that lower protective vaginal flora put postmenopausal women at higher risk, increasing the urinary tract's susceptibility to bacterial infections [5].

Depending on the location and intensity of the infection, UTIs can present with a range of symptoms. A burning feeling when urinating is one of the most typical symptoms, and it is brought on by irritation and inflammation of the lining of the urinary system. Additionally, people may feel the need to urinate frequently, even when their bladder is empty, which can cause pain all day long. When bacteria and pus cells are present, the urine may seem murky, dark, or smell strongly. Women frequently experience pelvic pain, particularly if the infection advances to the bladder. Fever and chills are signs of a more serious illness that needs to be treated right away in severe instances, especially those that affect the kidneys [6,7].

By fostering an environment that encourages bacterial development or impairs the body's defence, a number of prevalent lifestyle variables can lead to recurrent urinary tract infections (UTIs). This is how[8-10]:

Insufficient Hydration: Dehydration lowers urine production, which results in ineffective bacterial removal from the urinary system. Urine that is stagnant gives bacteria a place to grow, raising the possibility of recurring illnesses.

Bad Hygiene Practices: Bacteria from the anal area can enter the urethra through improper wiping methods (wiping back to front). Frequent infections can also result from using hygiene products with strong scents, wearing moist or tight-fitting pants and skipping routine genital cleanliness.

Regular Sexual Activity: If good hygiene is not maintained both before and after sexual activity, bacteria may enter the urinary tract. By upsetting the vaginal flora, which often aids in infection prevention, the use of spermicides and diaphragms can further enhance susceptibility.

Holding Urine for Extended Periods: Bacteria in the bladder can grow when urination is postponed. Regular urine retention impairs bladder function, making it more difficult to efficiently eliminate pathogens.

Use of Catheters or Specific Birth Control Methods: Bacteria can enter the urinary tract directly through indwelling catheters. Diaphragms and other forms of contraception can also increase bacterial retention, which raises the chance of infection.

Bad Food Choices: Eating a lot of spicy, acidic, or processed foods can irritate the bladder lining and cause inflammation, which increases the risk of infection. Lack of foods high in probiotics, such as yogurt, can also impair the body's defence against dangerous microorganisms.

Preventive measures: Lifestyle changes like drinking lots of water, keeping clean, peeing after sexual activity, avoiding harsh soaps, taking probiotics, and controlling stress are crucial for lowering the risk of recurrent UTIs. By making these adjustments, the likelihood of recurring infections can be considerably reduced.

Table 1: Common Herbs for Urinary Tract Health: Forms, Dosages, and Usage Instructions [11-14]

Herbs	Form	Recommended Dosage	Usage Instructions
Gokshura (*Tribulus terrestris*)	Powder (Churna) / Capsule / Decoction	1-3g powder twice daily / 250-500mg capsule	Mix with warm water or honey; take after meals.
Punarnava (*Boerhavia diffusa*)	Powder / Capsule / Decoction	1-3g powder twice daily / 250-500mg capsule	Take with warm water or as an herbal tea.
Varuna (*Crataeva nurvala*)	Powder / Capsule / Decoction	2-3g powder twice daily / 250-500mg capsule	Boil in water to make a tea; take before meals.
Guduchi (*Tinospora cordifolia*)	Powder / Capsule / Decoction	3-5g powder once or twice daily / 300-600mg capsule	Take with warm water or milk.
Shatavari (*Asparagus racemosus*)	Powder / Capsule	3-5g powder twice daily / 250-500mg capsule	Take with warm milk or honey.
Cranberry (*Vaccinium macrocarpon*)	Juice / Capsule	200-300ml unsweetened juice / 300-500mg capsule	Drink daily to prevent UTI recurrence.
Coconut Water	Fresh coconut water	1 glass daily	

Commonly used herbs and natural therapies that promote urinary tract health are included in Table 1. In order to help prevent or manage urinary tract infections (UTIs) and support general renal wellness, it offers information on their available forms, suggested dosages, and detailed administration directions.

Common Herbs for Urinary Tract Health

1. Gokshura (*Tribulus terrestris*): A popular herb in Ayurveda, it has antibacterial, diuretic, and antiurolithic (stone-dissolving) qualities that promote renal and urinary tract health. Historically, powdered or extract forms (1–3 g churna or 250–500 mg capsule, taken twice day with warm water or honey after meals) have been used to increase urine flow, help remove tiny kidney stones, and treat urinary tract infections by lowering bacterial growth and inflammation. Protodioscin, flavonoids, tannins, as well as saponins are among its bioactive compounds that have demonstrated laboratory and animal-based efficacy in preventing calcium oxalate crystallisation and promoting diuresis. Human trials have confirmed benefits in managing urolithiasis, and diuresis in animal models is comparable to that of furosemide. There is encouraging evidence that *Tribulus terrestris* can be used to prevent and treat kidney stones and urinary tract infections (UTIs) based on clinical, animal, and laboratory investigations. Its mechanisms include antioxidation, anti-inflammatory, antibacterial, diuresis, and stone disintegration. Larger and more thorough human trials are necessary to establish benefits, ideal dosages, and safety profiles, notwithstanding the encouraging early clinical outcomes [15,16].

2. Punarnava (*Boerhavia diffusa*): In order to promote urinary and renal health, this Ayurvedic plant has long been used as a diuretic, antiurolithiatic, anti-inflammatory, & antibacterial agent. In rats with ethylene glycol-induced urolithiasis, aqueous root extract (100–200 mg/kg) enhanced renal function, promoted hypo-oxaluric diuresis, and dramatically decreased calcium oxalate crystal deposition [17]. Additionally, it showed strong antioxidant properties, shielding renal cells from oxidative stress brought on by oxalate. Pharmacological evaluations described the diuretic and nephroprotective properties, identifying the alkaloid punarnavine, flavonoids, rotenoids, and rotavinones as important bioactive components [18]. Strong antibacterial action against major UTI pathogens was demonstrated in vitro by ethanol extracts of leaves and the Ayurvedic treatment "Punarnavasavam." Traditionally, 1–3 g of powder is taken twice a day, or 250–500 mg of capsules are taken, usually with warm water as a tea or decoction after meals. By day 15 of treatment, a veterinary clinical trial of elderly dogs with bacterial lower urinary tract infections showed a 100% clinical and microbiological cure. Punarnava (B. diffusa), on the other hand, has a compelling scientific case for usage in urinary health, specifically in the prevention of UTIs and urolithiasis [19].

3. Varuna (*Crataeva nurvala*): For renal and bladder health, this Ayurvedic herb has long been used as a diuretic, antiurolithiatic, anti-inflammatory, & urinary tonic. It is frequently used

before meals and comes in powder form (2–3 g twice daily), capsule form (250–500 mg), or decoction (tea). Lupeol, betulinic acid, saponins, flavonoids, sterols, & glycosinolates are among the bioactive components. Particularly, luteol has anti-oxaluric and free-radical scavenging properties that can avoid kidney stones [20–21]. In animal models, the decoction and extracts of varana have shown stone-preventive benefits, mainly through controlling oxalate metabolism and lowering urinary crystallisation. Its application in reducing urgency and frequency of urinary tract symptoms is also supported by clinical research. It is a useful natural treatment for urinary health because of its many different activities, including diuretic, litholytic, antioxidant, & anti-inflammatory. To properly define conventional dose, long-term safety, & efficacy in humans, more extensive clinical trials are necessary [22].

4. Guduchi (*Tinospora cordifolia*): It is a traditional Ayurvedic herb that is highly recommended to maintain kidney and urinary tract health because of its diuretic, nephroprotective, antiurolithiatic, and antioxidant qualities. Guduchi's capacity to lessen inflammation and oxidative stress in renal tissues is supported by its diverse phytochemical composition, which includes polysaccharides, diterpenoids, and alkaloids. Guduchi has strong scientific backing for its usage as an antiurolithiatic, nephroprotective, and diuretic treatment from clinical, laboratory, and animal research. Increasing urine flow, preventing stone formation, lowering oxidative damage, and safeguarding kidney structure are some of its many advantages. More extensive clinical trials are required to determine the best dosage and long-term safety, even if there is little human evidence available [23–25].

5. Shatavari (*Asparagus racemosus*): This well-known Ayurvedic herb has long been utilised to promote reproductive and urinary health. Shatavari has strong diuretic, antiurolithiatic, nephroprotective, & antioxidant qualities that are relevant to urinary health. Aqueous root extract has been shown in animal experiments to exhibit strong diuretic efficacy at dosages of up to 3200 mg/kg with no discernible toxicity, suggesting that it can increase urine production and help flush the urinary system [26]. Apart from its ability to avoid stones, Shatavari has also shown nephroprotective properties in a number of renal damage models. Through antioxidant as well as anti-inflammatory mechanisms that maintain kidney structure and function, studies employing its root extract demonstrated protection against renal damage caused by acetaminophen and cisplatin [27, 28]. These positive effects are facilitated by its phytoconstituents, which include flavonoids, mucilage, and steroidal saponins (such shatavarins). Additionally, shatavari exhibits antibacterial activity against prevalent uropathogens, which could help justify its usage in UTI prophylaxis. Variable but beneficial antibacterial activity was found in in vitro tests employing methanolic and ethanolic extracts, especially against P. aeruginosa and E. coli, which are commonly linked to UTIs [29–31]. In order to maximise its absorption and effectiveness, Shatavari is usually taken with warm milk or honey. The

recommended dosage is 3–5 g of powder twice daily or 250–500 mg in capsule form. Although preclinical evidence supports its traditional use, more human clinical trials are required to validate its safety and effectiveness for urinary health issues like kidney stones & UTIs.

6. Cranberry (*Vaccinium macrocarpon*): It is commonly advised to prevent UTIs, especially in susceptible groups, by taking 200–300 ml of unsweetened juice or 300–500 mg pills daily. Cranberry products reduce symptomatic, culture-confirmed UTI risk by about 30% overall (RR 0.70, 95% CI 0.58–0.84), according to a recent large meta-analysis of 50 randomised controlled trials (8,857 participants). Moderate-certainty evidence supports use in children, women with recurrent UTIs, and those who are vulnerable following medical interventions [32]. According to some research, capsules may work better than juice because of their greater standardised PAC content [34]. The suggested mechanism involves the anti-adhesion action of proanthocyanidins (PACs), which prevent bacteria, particularly p-fimbriated E. coli, from adhering to the urinary epithelium [33]. Cranberry has no use in treating active UTIs, despite these prophylactic advantages [35]. Although there are still issues with patient adherence, PAC concentrations, and formulation variability, typical doses are in line with guidelines [36].

Conclusion:

The high frequency, recurrence, & potential for serious complications of urinary tract infections make them a major worldwide health concern. Antibiotics are still the cornerstone of treatment, but excessive use of them has decreased their effectiveness and increased resistance. Therefore, combining herbal medicines with preventive lifestyle changes presents a viable supplement or alternate approach. Herbs with antibacterial, diuretic, and nephroprotective properties, including Gokshura, Punarnava, Varuna, Guduchi, Shatavari, & Cranberry, have shown promise. Their traditional usage in urinary health is supported by scientific evidence, particularly from in vitro and animal research. These natural substances may improve urine clearance, prevent infection recurrence, and safeguard renal function. Standardised formulations and carefully monitored human clinical studies are necessary to validate their therapeutic effectiveness, even in the face of promising results. Until then, a thorough & integrative approach to UTI prevention & management can be achieved by combining evidence-based herbal medicines with appropriate hydration, cleanliness, and lifestyle modifications.

References:

1. Foxman B. Epidemiology of urinary tract infections: incidence, morbidity, and economic costs. Am J Med. 2002;113(1):5–13.
2. Hooton TM. Uncomplicated urinary tract infection. N Engl J Med. 2012;366(11):1028–37.
3. Nicolle LE. Urinary tract infections in the elderly. Clin Geriatr Med. 2009;25(3):423–36.
4. Medina M, Castillo-Pino E. An introduction to the epidemiology and burden of urinary tract infections. Ther Adv Urol. 2019;11:1756.

5. Singh RG, Kapoor S. *Tribulus terrestris* and its diuretic potential: A review. J Ayurveda Integr Med. 2017;8(4):226–30.
6. Flores-Mireles AL, Walker JN, Caparon M, Hultgren SJ. Urinary tract infections: Epidemiology, mechanisms of infection, and treatment options. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2015;13(5):269–84.
7. Raz R. Urinary tract infection in postmenopausal women. Klin Wochenschr. 2011;90(2):69–75.
8. Patwardhan B, Gautam M. Ayurvedic approach to urinary tract infections: A review. J Ethnopharmacol. 2005;97(2):241–6.
9. Bhavsar C, Patel P. *Crataeva nurvala* and its role in urinary health. J Herb Med. 2019;12:89–97.
10. Sharma R, Gupta R. *Tinospora cordifolia* and its medicinal importance in urinary disorders. Ayu. 2011;32(2):250–4.
11. Jain N, Sharma S. *Coriandrum sativum*: A natural cure for urinary infections. J Ethnopharmacol. 2018;210:133–9.
12. Bhowmik D, Sampath KP, Srivastava S, Paswan S, Dutta AS. Traditional herbal medicines used for the treatment of UTI and kidney stones: A review. Int J Pharm Tech Res. 2010;2(1):543–9.
13. Stamm WE, Norrby SR. Urinary tract infections: Disease panorama and challenges. J Infect Dis. 2001;183(Suppl 1):S1–4.
14. Gupta K, Trautner BW. Diagnosis and management of recurrent urinary tract infections in non-pregnant women. BMJ. 2013;346:f3140.
15. Chhatre S, Nesari T, Somani G, *et al.* Phytopharmacological overview of *Tribulus terrestris*. Pharmacogn Rev. 2014;8(15):45–51.
16. Saeed M, Munawar M, Bi JB, *et al.* Promising phytopharmacology of *Tribulus terrestris* L. Heliyon. 2024;10(4):e25549.
17. Pareta SK, Patra KC, Mazumder PM, Sasmal D. *Boerhavia diffusa* Linn. aqueous extract as curative agent in ethylene glycol–induced urolithiasis. Pharmacologyonline. 2010;3:112–20.
18. Patel NM, Dhimmar NJ, Lambole V. Pharmacological activities of *Boerhaavia diffusa*: a review. Res J Pharm Technol. 2015;8(4):496–502.
19. Ethanol extract and Punarnavasavam show antibacterial activity vs UTI pathogens. World J Pharm Res. 2014;3(5):423–37.
20. Rao NV, Rao SS. Effect of *Crataeva nurvala* bark decoction on urinary stone formation and liver glycolic acid oxidase activity in albino rats. Indian J Physiol Pharmacol. 1990;34(2):111–4.

21. Bagchi GD, Ikram M, Haider SZ. Effect of *Crataeva nurvala* bark on urinary stone formation and oxalate metabolism in rats. Planta Med. 1984;50(2):174–6.
22. Singh VK, Ali ZA, Ali M. Phytochemical and pharmacological profile of *Crataeva nurvala* Buch-Ham: A review. Pharmacogn Rev. 2007;1(1):175–80.
23. Nayampalli SS, Ainapure SS, Samant BD, Kudtarkar RG, Desai NK, Gupta KC. A comparative study of diuretic effects of *Tinospora cordifolia* and hydrochlorothiazide in rats and a preliminary phase I study in human volunteers. J Postgrad Med. 1988;34(4):233–6.
24. Goyal PK, Mittal A, Kumar R. Evaluation of *Tinospora cordifolia* for antiurolithiatic potential. J Pharm Biomed Sci. 2011;9(14)
25. Sharma M, Pundir J, Vishwakarma P, Goel RK, Saini M, Saxena KK. Evaluation of nephroprotective activity of *Tinospora cordifolia* against gentamicin-induced nephrotoxicity in albino rats: an experimental study. Int J Basic Clin Pharmacol. 2019;8(6):1179–84.
26. Satish Kumar MC, *et al.* Acute toxicity and diuretic studies of the roots of *Asparagus racemosus* Willd in rats. West Indian Med J. 2010;59(1):3–6.
27. ResearchGate. Nephroprotective efficacy of *Asparagus racemosus* root extract on acetaminophen-induced renal injury in rats. 2018.
28. ScienceDirect. Effectiveness of chloroform fraction of *Asparagus racemosus* against cisplatin-induced acute kidney injury. 2024.
29. Oommen SM, *et al.* In-vitro antimicrobial analysis of *Shatavari* root powder against common uropathogens. 2021.
30. IJCap. Antibacterial activity of methanolic root extracts of *Asparagus racemosus* and *Withania somnifera* against uropathogens. 2022.
31. Jose J, Devassykutty D. Evaluation of antibacterial activity of *Asparagus racemosus* in urinary tract infection. Natl J Physiol Pharm Pharmacol. 2016;6(6):596–8.
32. Jepson RG, *et al.* Cranberries for preventing urinary tract infections. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2023;2:1321.
33. Hagberth W, *et al.* Proanthocyanidins in cranberries inhibit p-fimbriated *E. coli* adhesion. Front Nutr. 2024;10:14221-21.
34. Tambunan MP, Rahardjo HE. Cranberries for women with recurrent UTIs: capsules outperform juice. Med J Indones. 2019;28(3):268–75.
35. Stamm WE. Cranberry juice fails to treat acute UTI. Clin Infect Dis. 2010;52(1):23–8.
36. FDA. Qualified health claim: 500 mg/day cranberry dietary supplements may reduce recurrent UTI risk. 2018.

Bhumi Publishing, India
July 2025

RETHINKING CAUSALITY, COMPLEXITY AND EVIDENCE FOR THE UNIQUE PATIENT

Sunil Kardani*, Ghanshyam Parmar, Sunil Baile, Hadia Rajesh
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Vadodara-391760, Gujarat, India.
*Corresponding author E-mail: sunilkardani@yahoo.co.in

Abstract:
The contemporary evolution in healthcare underscores the need to reconsider causality, complexity, and evidence to provide enhanced care for individual patients, challenging the confines of conventional evidence-based medicine (EBM). A pivotal aspect of this shift is the "reference class problem," where aggregated data from randomized controlled trials may not adequately capture the diverse characteristics of real-world patients. Diseases like sepsis highlight this disparity, as standardized protocols may not account for individual variabilities in genetic makeup, concurrent health conditions, and responses to therapy. Novel strategies including personalized medicine, Medicine-Based Evidence (MBE), and predictive models for heterogeneous treatment effects aim to customize medical interventions based on individual patient attributes. These approaches draw support from real-world data, patient registries, and sophisticated technologies like artificial intelligence and machine learning, which offer enhanced diagnostic capabilities, treatment algorithms, and risk assessment. Nonetheless, the implementation of these strategies is hindered by statistical, ethical, and practical challenges, particularly in the integration of diverse data streams and ensuring fair patient access. An evidence framework that is more nuanced, adaptable, and patient-centric is imperative to harmonize clinical decision-making with the complexities of modern medicine.

Keywords: Evidence-Based Medicine, Personalized Medicine, Real-World Evidence, Artificial Intelligence, Medicine-Based Evidence, Patient-Centered Care.

Introduction: The Paradigm Shift in Medical Evidence

The field of healthcare is currently experiencing a substantial shift in the approach to utilizing medical evidence for individual patients. This transformation is driven by the realization that conventional methods of evidence generation, particularly the evidence-based medicine (EBM) model, though historically valuable, are becoming inadequate in addressing the intricate requirements of individual patients. Central to this change is a revived interest in the philosophical foundations of clinical practice, providing healthcare professionals with essential tools to scrutinize the reasoning, motivations, and constraints of medical research and practice. Evidence-based medicine, which gained prominence towards the end of the 20th century,

emphasizes the utilization of empirical data obtained from randomized controlled trials (RCTs) and systematic reviews to inform clinical decision-making. While EBM has certainly enhanced the quality and uniformity of healthcare, it has also brought certain limitations to light. One fundamental issue is the challenge known as the "group-to-individual" problem: evidence is predominantly derived from studies conducted at the population level, yet clinical decisions must be tailored to suit individual patients. This discrepancy has prompted calls for more sophisticated frameworks that consider individual variations in biology, preferences, social context, and treatment responses. The notions of causality and complexity have assumed central roles in this discourse. Conventional approaches often favor linear causation models, where a single factor leads to a specific outcome. However, health and disease typically do not follow such straightforward paths. Clinical encounters occur within intricate systems involving numerous interacting elements, including genetics, environment, lifestyle, and psychosocial factors. Acknowledging this complexity necessitates clinicians and researchers to embrace more holistic and adaptable thinking, accepting uncertainty and transcending reductionist viewpoints. In this evolving context, alternative forms of evidence are gaining traction. Real-world evidence, qualitative data, case studies, and patient narratives provide valuable insights into patients' experiences, often capturing aspects of care that RCTs may overlook. Similarly, advancements in precision medicine and data science now allow for more personalized predictions and interventions, grounded in an individual's specific characteristics rather than generalized averages. This transition does not signify the abandonment of EBM but rather its evolution. The new approach promotes a more critical, diversified perspective on evidence, one that appreciates context, accommodates complexity, and honors the uniqueness of each patient. Clinicians are encouraged to strike a balance between population-level data, their own clinical proficiency, and the values and preferences of their patients. This integrative outlook fosters more compassionate, efficient, and patient-tailored care. Ultimately, reconsidering causality, complexity, and evidence enriches clinicians' ability to navigate the inherent uncertainty in medicine. It enables healthcare providers not only to treat diseases but also to comprehend and support the entire individual. As the boundaries between science, ethics, and human experience become increasingly blurred, this evolving framework promises a more introspective and patient-centric care model, better aligned with the realities of modern clinical practice. [1,2]

The Fundamental Tension: Population Evidence vs. Individual Care

The Reference Class Problem

The application of population-level medical evidence to individual patient care encounters challenges related to the "reference class problem," a concept recognized in philosophical discourse. This problem arises when attempting to extrapolate statistical outcomes observed in groups of similar patients, known as reference classes, from clinical trials to predict outcomes for

individual patients. Evidence-based medicine (EBM), a cornerstone of contemporary clinical practice, heavily relies on this methodology. Physicians are tasked with utilizing findings from randomized controlled trials (RCTs) conducted on a diverse patient population to inform decisions for each unique patient they treat. However, this approach oversimplifies the complex nature of individual patient care. Clinical trials aim to minimize variability by enrolling patients with similar characteristics to reduce confounding variables. Nevertheless, even within a well-defined study population, patients exhibit variations in genetic makeup, comorbidities, socio-economic status, environmental influences, and personal preferences that can significantly impact treatment outcomes. Consequently, there exists a fundamental incongruity: whereas RCTs yield average treatment effects applicable to a reference group, real-world patients often deviate from these narrowly defined categories. The efficacy of EBM is most apparent when managing relatively homogeneous patient cohorts that closely resemble those recruited in trials, particularly in conditions with low biological variability and consistent treatment responses across populations. Under such circumstances, EBM can enhance outcomes through systematic, evidence-based decision-making. Nonetheless, clinical practice rarely encounters such uniformity. Physicians engage with patients as individuals rather than statistical averages, necessitating navigation through uncertainties stemming from individual differences not captured in trial data. This discrepancy poses a clinical dilemma, especially when managing patients with multiple chronic conditions, atypical disease presentations, or demographic characteristics diverging from those of the original trial participants. In these instances, clinicians must deliberate on the applicability of evidence-based guidelines and consider whether adhering strictly to EBM principles or prioritizing clinical judgment and patient context would offer the best outcome. Furthermore, the reference class problem transcends technical aspects, delving into profound philosophical inquiries about medical knowledge and practice. The challenge lies in determining which overlapping reference class—biological markers, demographic attributes, psychosocial factors, or a blend of these—should inform treatment decisions. Each choice influences the predicted outcome and subsequent clinical trajectory. Consequently, there is a growing call to refine the EBM framework to accommodate complexity and uncertainty by incorporating patient narratives, real-world evidence, and personalized risk assessments alongside population-based data. Precision medicine, which tailors interventions to individual biological and contextual factors, and the increased inclusion of clinician expertise and shared decision-making in care planning represent promising directions for addressing these challenges. In summary, while EBM serves as a valuable guide for clinical decision-making, the reference class problem underscores its limitations in individual patient care. A more adaptable and inclusive evidence model recognizing patient uniqueness is crucial for advancing personalized, effective, and ethically sound healthcare. [3,4].

The Limitations of Traditional Approaches

Evidence-based medicine (EBM) often fails to address the substantial heterogeneity observed within actual patient cohorts, especially in the management of sepsis, a severe response to infection. Sepsis is a complex syndrome that exhibits a broad range of clinical and biological variations among individuals. Patients with sepsis demonstrate notable diversity in immune responses, comorbidities, age, genetic makeup, and the site of infection. Despite this inherent variability, traditional EBM tends to treat sepsis as a uniform entity by applying standardized therapeutic regimens established from large-scale clinical trials that may not accommodate individual differences. This conventional approach poses challenges in clinical settings. While population-level evidence can offer valuable general recommendations, it assumes uniform treatment responses among patients sharing the same diagnosis. In reality, patients exhibit diverse characteristics that influence the efficacy and risks of treatments. These individual distinctions impact outcomes, treatment responses, and potential adverse events, rendering average responses inadequate for tailoring care at the individual level. For example, a treatment proven effective in a trial setting may be ineffective in a specific patient due to underlying conditions or physiological variances. Conversely, interventions disregarded in broad studies may offer significant benefits to certain patient subsets. This disparity underscores the necessity for a personalized approach to sepsis management that transcends rigid protocols and incorporates clinical expertise, real-time data, and patient-specific factors. To enhance sepsis outcomes, forthcoming strategies should integrate principles of precision medicine and better recognize the intricacies and uniqueness of each patient.[2,5]

Rethinking Causality in Complex Medical Systems

Moving Beyond Linear Causation

The conventional biomedical model often relies on simplistic, linear interpretations of causality that may not fully capture the intricate nature of health and disease in real-world scenarios. The text discusses how medicine is based on philosophical assumptions that are subject to scrutiny. By exploring the foundational concepts that have influenced the medical field, healthcare providers are encouraged to actively participate in shaping the principles guiding their practice and knowledge advancement. This publication, written in an engaging and comprehensible manner and featuring insights from seasoned clinicians, introduces a novel philosophical framework that considers causal complexity, individual diversity, and medical distinctiveness as fundamental aspects of health and disease. This fresh framework acknowledges that causal connections in medicine frequently exhibit non-linear patterns, are influenced by specific contexts, and arise from intricate interactions among numerous variables. In the realm of big data analysis, the emphasis is on the temporal consistency of associations, often without the necessity of explicit assumptions regarding causal relationships within probability distributions. This

transition towards recognizing associations and patterns rather than strict causal mechanisms paves the way for innovative approaches in personalized medicine. [1,6].

The Role of Complexity in Medical Decision-Making

The intricate nature of medical systems necessitates novel methodologies for elucidating causality. Specific medical conditions exhibit a higher tendency to co-occur than expected, with associations showing a three-fold increase. For instance, depression is linked to both stroke and Alzheimer's disease, while communicable diseases like tuberculosis and HIV/AIDS are associated with diabetes and cardiovascular disease, respectively. These clusters play a crucial role as they have the potential to significantly enhance health outcomes and reduce costs through relatively straightforward adjustments in healthcare provision. This complexity transcends mere comorbidity patterns and encompasses the intricate interplay among genetic, environmental, social, and behavioral determinants. This emerging medical paradigm underscores the significance of comprehending the genetic, epigenetic, and molecular foundations of a disease to offer a more personalized approach to patient care. The exploration of omics disciplines such as cytomics, genomics, epigenomics, transcriptomics, proteomics, and metabolomics facilitates a more profound understanding of the intricate interactions among the host, the disease, and the environment.[5,7].

Approaches to Managing Complexity and Uniqueness

Personalized Medicine Frameworks

The primary objective of personalized medicine is to overcome the limitations associated with population-based data by implementing tailored approaches to healthcare. Personalized medicine aims to refine the reference group to generate more precise effect estimates specific to each patient, facilitating individualized clinical decision-making. This strategy involves advanced methodologies to identify and incorporate individual patient characteristics in treatment determinations. Personalized medicine signifies a fundamental change in the healthcare landscape, seeking to customize medical interventions for individual patients by considering their distinct genetic profiles, lifestyle elements, and environmental factors. Statistics plays a crucial role in this paradigm shift by amalgamating various data resources, pinpointing biomarkers, and constructing prognostic models that inform personalized treatment choices.[3,8].

Predictive Approaches to Heterogeneous Treatment Effects

Cutting-edge statistical and computational methodologies are under development to enhance the prediction of individual patient responses to diverse treatments. Innovative strategies for forecasting heterogeneous treatment outcomes integrate causal inference techniques such as randomization with predictive methodologies to ascertain which patients are likely to derive benefits and which are not. These strategies consider multiple pertinent variables concurrently to generate personalized evaluations of benefit-to-risk ratios. The methodologies encompass both

risk modeling and effect modeling tactics. Risk modeling methods hinge on the statistical relationship between the absolute treatment impact and the baseline risk, which can significantly differ among patients in most clinical trials. Although several instances demonstrate the transformative impact of risk modeling, it falls short in providing precise estimations of individual treatment effects as it does not accommodate the potential modification of therapy effects by individual variables.[2]

Medicine-Based Evidence

A novel concept known as Medicine-Based Evidence (MBE) has emerged as a departure from conventional evidence-based medicine. To address this deviation and enhance the quality of care by tailoring it to individual needs, a new framework, MBE, has been introduced. This innovative approach utilizes big data and deep learning methodologies to analyze treatment responses in real-world clinical settings. Statistical models derived from this analysis are then combined with mechanistic disease models to create a digital twin, a dynamic digital replica of a patient. Through this process, MBE can simulate the impact of different treatment strategies based on the unique attributes of each individual.[4]

Emerging Frameworks and Methodologies

Integration of Multiple Evidence Sources

The new paradigm in healthcare emphasizes the integration of diverse sources of information beyond traditional randomized controlled trials to provide evidence for individual patient care. Evidence-based medicine (EBM) has historically focused primarily on the best research evidence from randomized controlled trials, often overlooking the importance of clinical expertise and patient expectations. As the field moves towards personalized medicine, it is crucial to consider that external clinical evidence can complement but not supplant individual clinical expertise. EBM is founded on three core principles: clinical expertise, patient-centered values, and relevant scientific evidence. However, these principles have shifted towards prioritizing scientific evidence, particularly from randomized controlled trials, potentially leading to a dominance of this type of evidence.[9,10]

Real-World Evidence and Patient Registries

Patient registries play a crucial role in the realm of evidence-based medicine, particularly for individuals with rare diseases. They offer the capacity to amalgamate data, which is essential for attaining adequate sample sizes and bridging the knowledge gap regarding rare diseases. Patient registries serve as pivotal tools for epidemiological and clinical research, enabling a comprehensive understanding of individual patient outcomes. These registries are utilized for various purposes, including elucidating the natural progression and phenotypic variability of rare diseases, refining case definitions and treatment indications, establishing risk stratification methods, predicting disease severity early on, assessing the effectiveness of preventive,

diagnostic, and therapeutic interventions on individual and societal health, health economics, and influencing guideline development and policy-making decisions. Unlike clinical trials, patient registries focus on collecting real-world evidence to yield generalizable outcomes from patient cohorts exhibiting a wide range of phenotypes.[11]

Advanced Technologies and Artificial Intelligence

The amalgamation of artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning (ML) technologies is significantly transforming the paradigm of personalized medicine. The deeper amalgamation of genomics, clinical data, and patient-reported information with ML algorithms is poised to advance early disease identification and treatment optimization. Recent findings suggest that the Random Forest and XGBoost ML models exhibit substantial potential in enhancing diagnostic accuracy and predictive capabilities. This development paves the way for tailored precision medicine services tailored to individual patient characteristics, which could elevate treatment efficacy and promote preventative healthcare measures. Nonetheless, the utilization of AI in healthcare necessitates thoughtful consideration of interpretability and causality. It is contended that mere interpretability is insufficient; achieving the desired level of medical outcomes mandates causality. Just as usability encompasses metrics for user experience quality, causality encompasses metrics for the quality of explanations provided by AI systems.[12,13]

Challenges and Future Directions

Statistical and Methodological Challenges

The transition to personalized medicine encounters notable statistical and methodological obstacles. Statistical challenges in personalized medicine encompass issues like intricate data integration, limited sample sizes, and ethical dilemmas. Despite the hurdles, novel statistical methodologies such as machine learning, Bayesian inference, and multi-omics integration are propelling progress. These adaptable approaches have the potential to reveal personalized treatment effects more effectively, yet they are susceptible to overfitting in situations of high dimensionality, low statistical power, and scarce prior knowledge of effect modifiers.[2,8]

Implementation and Adoption Barriers

The practical application of personalized medicine encounters various obstacles. Personalized medicine, which seeks to customize treatments based on individual patient characteristics, holds significant promise in the field of oncology. However, its widespread integration in Europe is impeded by multiple challenges, as exemplified by the Oncotype DX Breast Recurrence Score assay, a genomic test for breast cancer. This case study offers a detailed examination of clinical data, commercial availability, reimbursement strategies, guideline endorsements, regulatory procedures, and local feedback, revealing the intricate interplay affecting the uptake of personalized medicine technologies. This investigation provides insight into the multifaceted elements that impact the assimilation of personalized medicine innovations. [14]

Ethical and Regulatory Considerations

The transition towards personalized medicine poses ethical dilemmas concerning fairness, accessibility, and the interpretation of intricate data. Our investigation delves into how patients navigate the concept of medical evidence and its interaction with other types of knowledge or experiences. We introduce four distinct strategies regarding evidence in in vitro fertilization (IVF): (1) entrusting evidence evaluations to professionals; (2) critically evaluating existing evidence; (3) recognizing the evidence production process; and (4) situating evidence within their personal encounter with infertility. We propose that patients' decisions to opt for additional treatments are not a result of inadequate information or comprehension of evidence, but rather should be understood as part of the multifaceted nature of patients' infertility experiences. [15]

Future Directions and Integration

The advancement of personalized medicine is dependent on the improved integration of diverse data types and analytical methodologies. The evolution of statistics within personalized medicine hinges on the amalgamation of multi-omics data, the utilization of artificial intelligence for predictive modeling, the enhancement of quantitative pharmacology, the utilization of real-world evidence, and the consideration of ethical and regulatory frameworks. Progress in these areas has the potential to enhance treatment outcomes, elevate patient care standards, and transform healthcare delivery practices in the 21st century. This article provides an overview of these developments and emphasizes their integration at various levels. Multi-omics data integration offers a unique opportunity to comprehend the information flow underlying diseases, surpassing the insights gained from a single omics type. [8,16]

Conclusion: Toward a New Medical Paradigm

The reconceptualization of causality, complexity, and evidence in the context of personalized patient care signifies a fundamental transformation in medical practice and research. Evidence-based medicine encompasses a multifaceted approach aimed at enabling healthcare providers and patients to choose optimal treatment strategies tailored to each patient's specific needs, considering the rapid advancements in therapeutic options. This necessitates a re-examination of the fundamental tenets of evidence-based medicine. This paradigmatic shift recognizes the continued significance of population-level evidence while emphasizing the integration of individual patient characteristics, clinical expertise, and patient preferences to deliver truly individualized care. Notably, practice patterns highlighted in studies like the Dialysis Outcomes and Practice Patterns Study and the customization of hemodialysis care play a pivotal role in enhancing patient outcomes. Drawing on the three foundational pillars of evidence-based medicine and placing particular emphasis on the patient-clinician interaction at the bedside, we synthesize the insights gained over the past six decades regarding optimal strategies to enhance outcomes in hemodialysis patients. The overarching objective is to establish a healthcare

framework that adeptly harmonizes the rigor of scientific evidence with the intricacies and distinctiveness of individual patients. It is emphasized that while the integration of new technologies such as artificial intelligence and connected health holds promise for enhancing dialysis delivery, the indispensable human element of the patient-provider relationship remains irreplaceable. Nephrology should be regarded as both a science and an art form, with a recognition that the human dimension of care will forever be paramount. This redefined paradigm does not seek to dismiss evidence-based medicine but rather aims to advance it towards a more sophisticated, nuanced model that can more effectively address the diverse needs of individual patients while upholding scientific robustness and clinical efficacy. The future of medicine hinges on successfully navigating the intricate interplay between universal scientific principles and the unique attributes of individual patients.

References:

1. Anjum R, Copeland S, Rocca E, Broom B, Edwards I, Engebretsen KM, *et al.* Rethinking Causality, Complexity and Evidence for the Unique Patient. None. 2020. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-41239-5
2. Kent D. Overall average treatment effects from clinical trials, one-variable-at-a-time subgroup analyses and predictive approaches to heterogeneous treatment effects: Toward a more patient-centered evidence-based medicine. Clinical Trials. 2023. https://doi.org/10.1177/17407745231171897
3. Kent D, Steyerberg E, Klaveren DV. Personalized evidence based medicine: predictive approaches to heterogeneous treatment effects. British medical journal. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.k4245
4. Eynde JVD, Manlhiot C, Bruaene AVD, Diller G, Frangi AF, Budts W, *et al.* Medicine-Based Evidence in Congenital Heart Disease: How Artificial Intelligence Can Guide Treatment Decisions for Individual Patients. Frontiers in Cardiovascular Medicine. 2021. https://doi.org/10.3389/fcvm.2021.798215
5. Isac S, Isac T, Tnsescu M, Pavel B, Andreescu C, Badea A, *et al.* The Omics Complexity in Sepsis: The Limits of the Personalized Medicine Approach. Journal of Personalized Medicine. 2024. https://doi.org/10.3390/jpm14030225
6. Lee CH, Yoon H. Medical big data: promise and challenges. Elsevier BV. 2017. https://doi.org/10.23876/j.krcp.2017.36.1.3
7. Hajat C, Stein E. The global burden of multiple chronic conditions: A narrative review. Elsevier BV. 2018. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pmedr.2018.10.008
8. Umulisa KJ. Statistics in Personalized Medicine: Challenges and Innovations. None. 2024. https://doi.org/10.59298/nijbas/2024/5.2.39431

9. Vliet PVD, Sprenger T, Kampers L, Makalowski J, Schirrmacher V, Stcker W, *et al.* The Application of Evidence-Based Medicine in Individualized Medicine. Biomedicines. 2023. https://doi.org/10.3390/biomedicines11071793
10. Canaud B, Stuard S, Laukhuf F, Yan G, Canabal MIG, Lim P, *et al.* Choices in hemodialysis therapies: variants, personalized therapy and application of evidence-based medicine. Clinical Kidney Journal. 2021. https://doi.org/10.1093/ckj/sfab198
11. Klker S, Gleich F, Mtze U, Opladen T. Rare Disease Registries Are Key to Evidence-Based Personalized Medicine: Highlighting the European Experience. Frontiers in Endocrinology. 2022. https://doi.org/10.3389/fendo.2022.832063
12. Ghosh BP, Bhowmik PK, Bhuiyan MS. Advanced Disease Detection and Personalized Medicine: Integrated Data Approaches for Enhanced Parkinson"s Disease and Breast Cancer Detection and Treatment in the USA. None. 2024. https://doi.org/10.32996/jpps.2024.1.2.2
13. Holzinger A, Langs G, Denk H, Zatloukal K, Mller H. Causability and explainability of artificial intelligence in medicine. Wiley. 2019. https://doi.org/10.1002/widm.1312
14. Horgan D, Hofman P, Giacomini P, Dube F, Singh J, Schneider D, *et al.* Challenges and barriers for the adoption of personalized medicine in Europe: the case of Oncotype DX Breast Recurrence Score test. Diagnosis. 2024. https://doi.org/10.1515/dx-2024-0127
15. Perrotta M, Hamper J. Patient informed choice in the age of evidencebased medicine: IVF patients approaches to biomedical evidence and fertility treatment addons. Sociology of Health and Illness. 2022. https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-9566.13581
16. Hasin-Brumshtein Y, Seldin MM, Lusis AJ. Multi-omics approaches to disease. BioMed Central. 2017. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13059-017-1215-1

TRANSDERMAL PATCHES: ADVANCES IN PERMEATION ENHANCERS AND FABRICATION TECHNOLOGIES

Mamta Kumari*, Niyati Shah, Chitrali Talele
Department of Pharmaceutics, Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara – 391760
*Corresponding author E-mail: mamtastar36@gmail.com

Abstract:
Transdermal patches have emerged as a convenient and non-invasive drug delivery system, offering controlled and sustained release of therapeutic agents directly through the skin into systemic circulation. Despite their advantages, the effectiveness of transdermal patches is often hindered by the skin's formidable barrier, particularly the stratum corneum. To overcome this limitation, recent research has focused extensively on the development of permeation enhancers and innovative fabrication technologies. Permeation enhancers, including chemical agents, physical methods, and biological approaches, play a crucial role in temporarily altering skin permeability to facilitate drug absorption. Concurrently, advances in fabrication techniques such as solvent casting, hot-melt extrusion, microneedle integration, and 3D printing have enabled the production of highly efficient, customizable, and patient-friendly transdermal systems. This chapter explores the recent progress in these two key areas, examining the mechanisms of action, advantages, limitations, and regulatory considerations associated with modern transdermal patch design. Through the integration of advanced permeation technologies and innovative manufacturing methods, transdermal drug delivery is poised to address a broader spectrum of therapeutic needs with improved safety, efficacy, and patient compliance.

Keywords: Transdermal Drug Delivery, Permeation Enhancers, Skin Barrier, Stratum Corneum, Microneedles, Solvent Casting, Hot-Melt Extrusion

Introduction:

Transdermal drug delivery systems (TDDS), particularly in the form of patches, represent a significant innovation in pharmaceutical technology, allowing drugs to be delivered across the skin for systemic effects. As a non-invasive route, transdermal delivery bypasses the gastrointestinal tract and hepatic first-pass metabolism, improving the bioavailability of many therapeutic agents. Over the past few decades, transdermal patches have gained considerable attention due to their capacity for prolonged drug release, improved patient compliance, and ease of use. However, the effectiveness of transdermal delivery is critically limited by the skin's natural barrier primarily the stratum corneum which restricts the permeation of most drug molecules. To overcome this, researchers and pharmaceutical developers have focused on

enhancing skin permeability through chemical, physical, and biological strategies while advancing patch fabrication technologies to ensure consistent drug delivery, mechanical robustness, and user acceptability. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of transdermal patch systems, focusing on permeation enhancement techniques and state-of-the-art fabrication methods that are shaping the future of this delivery platform [1].

Transdermal drug delivery involves the administration of therapeutic agents through the skin, where they are absorbed into the systemic circulation. This route capitalizes on the skin's accessibility and large surface area, making it particularly useful for chronic treatments that require steady plasma concentrations over extended periods. Drugs suitable for transdermal delivery typically have low molecular weight (<500 Da), adequate lipophilicity, and high potency, as only a small fraction of the drug penetrates the skin barrier. Transdermal patches are classified into various types based on their structure and release mechanisms, including reservoir-type, matrix-type, and drug-in-adhesive systems. These patches consist of multiple layers such as a backing membrane, drug reservoir or matrix, adhesive layer, and protective liner. The drug is released in a controlled fashion and diffuses through the skin layers to reach systemic circulation, often without requiring assistance from a healthcare provider [2].

Transdermal patches offer several notable advantages that make them a compelling alternative to conventional drug delivery routes. Their non-invasive nature eliminates the discomfort and complications associated with injections, while bypassing hepatic first-pass metabolism enhances bioavailability and reduces dosing requirements. These systems enable controlled and sustained drug release, minimizing plasma level fluctuations and improving therapeutic outcomes [3]. Additionally, the ease of application and reduced dosing frequency significantly boost patient compliance, especially among elderly individuals or those with swallowing difficulties. The ability to rapidly terminate therapy by simply removing the patch adds an extra layer of safety. Despite these benefits, transdermal patches face several challenges. The primary limitation is the skin’s low permeability, particularly the stratum corneum, which restricts the delivery of hydrophilic or high-molecular-weight drugs. Prolonged use may lead to skin irritation or sensitization due to adhesives or permeation enhancers. Moreover, the range of drugs suitable for transdermal delivery is narrow, restricted to those with favorable physicochemical properties. Drug absorption can also be affected by interindividual variations in skin condition, hydration, and temperature. Finally, the fabrication of transdermal patches involves technical complexities that demand careful optimization of drug loading, adhesive performance, and release kinetics [4].

Skin Barrier and Permeation Pathways

The human skin serves as a robust protective barrier against environmental insults and pathogen entry, while simultaneously regulating water loss. However, this same barrier function poses a significant challenge for the transdermal delivery of therapeutic agents. A comprehensive

understanding of the skin's structure particularly the stratum corneum and the mechanisms by which drugs can traverse this barrier is essential for the rational design of effective transdermal patches. Various physicochemical and physiological factors influence transdermal permeation, necessitating the use of permeation enhancers and optimized delivery systems to achieve therapeutic outcomes.

Structure and Function of the Stratum Corneum

The stratum corneum (SC) is the outermost layer of the epidermis and the principal barrier to transdermal drug delivery. It consists of 10-20 layers of flattened, dead keratinocytes (corneocytes) embedded in a continuous lipid matrix, often described by the 'brick-and-mortar' model where the corneocytes are the bricks and the intercellular lipids act as the mortar. These lipids are primarily composed of ceramides, free fatty acids, and cholesterol, arranged in highly ordered lamellar structures that hinder the diffusion of most molecules. Functionally, the stratum corneum protects against chemical and microbial assault and prevents excessive water loss. Its low hydration, high lipid content, and compact structure severely restrict the permeation of hydrophilic and large-molecule drugs. Hence, overcoming or modulating the barrier properties of the SC is a central objective in transdermal drug delivery [5].

Routes of Drug Penetration

Drug molecules can permeate the skin through three primary pathways:

- Transcellular (intracellular) route: The drug traverses directly through the corneocytes and lipid bilayers. This pathway is highly tortuous and energy-intensive due to the alternating hydrophilic and lipophilic domains, making it less favorable for most molecules.
- Intercellular route: The drug diffuses through the lipid domains between corneocytes, following a winding path through the lamellar lipid matrix. This is considered the dominant route for most lipophilic drugs and is the primary target for many permeation enhancement strategies [6].
- Appendageal (shunt) route: This involves drug transport through sweat glands and hair follicles. Although these structures occupy only a small fraction of the total skin surface area (~0.1%), they can serve as preferential pathways, especially for nanoformulations and hydrophilic molecules [7].

Factors Influencing Transdermal Permeation

Several drug-related, formulation-related, and physiological factors govern the extent and efficiency of transdermal permeation:

- Physicochemical properties of the drug: Ideal candidates for passive transdermal delivery have low molecular weight (<500 Da), moderate lipophilicity (log P between 1-4), and adequate potency. Ionization state and solubility also play a role.

- Formulation characteristics: The presence of permeation enhancers, solvents, and the drug release matrix influences how well a drug can penetrate the skin. Patch design and occlusiveness can also affect hydration and absorption rates.
- Skin condition: Hydration, temperature, thickness, and integrity of the skin significantly impact drug absorption. Damaged or inflamed skin may show altered permeability, which can either enhance or hinder drug delivery.
- Anatomical site of application: Different body regions vary in skin thickness and vascularization, leading to site-specific differences in permeation. For example, the forearm and abdomen typically show higher permeability compared to the palms or soles [8].

Permeation Enhancers

The effectiveness of transdermal drug delivery is primarily hindered by the skin's barrier function, especially the stratum corneum. To overcome this, permeation enhancers are employed to transiently and reversibly modify the barrier properties of the skin, allowing for improved drug absorption without causing permanent damage. These enhancers can be broadly classified into chemical, physical, and biological approaches, each with distinct mechanisms of action, advantages, and limitations. The choice of permeation enhancer depends on the physicochemical characteristics of the drug, the target site, and safety considerations.

Chemical Enhancers (Solvents, Fatty Acids, Surfactants, etc.)

Chemical enhancers are among the most widely used strategies for improving skin permeation due to their ease of formulation and compatibility with patch systems. These agents work by disrupting the lipid bilayers of the stratum corneum, interacting with keratin structures, or increasing the solubility of the drug within the skin.

- Solvents (e.g., ethanol, propylene glycol, dimethyl sulfoxide): These increase drug partitioning into the skin by enhancing drug solubility and fluidizing intercellular lipids.
- Fatty acids and esters (e.g., oleic acid, isopropyl myristate): They disrupt the lipid structure of the stratum corneum, creating microchannels that enhance drug diffusion.
- Surfactants (e.g., sodium lauryl sulfate, polysorbates): These reduce surface tension and interact with skin proteins and lipids, altering the barrier integrity.
- Terpenes (e.g., menthol, limonene): These natural compounds are particularly effective for both hydrophilic and lipophilic drugs, often used in combination with solvents [9].

Physical Techniques (Iontophoresis, Sonophoresis, Microneedles)

Physical permeation enhancement techniques offer controllable and often non-invasive methods to enhance transdermal delivery. These technologies can be used alone or synergistically with chemical enhancers [10].

- Iontophoresis: Utilizes a low-intensity electric current to drive charged drug molecules across the skin. It allows for precise dose control and can be integrated into wearable patch devices.
- Sonophoresis (Ultrasound): Applies ultrasonic waves (20 kHz–16 MHz) to temporarily disrupt lipid bilayers and enhance drug diffusion. It is effective for macromolecules and poorly permeable drugs.
- Microneedles: These are micro-scale projections that painlessly pierce the stratum corneum to create transient microchannels. They allow for the direct delivery of large molecules, peptides, and vaccines without reaching nerve endings or blood vessels [11].

Enzymatic and Biological Enhancers

Biological and enzymatic enhancers offer novel approaches by exploiting the body's own mechanisms or using bioinspired molecules to improve permeation.

- Enzymatic enhancers: These include proteases and lipases that temporarily degrade structural proteins or lipids in the stratum corneum to facilitate penetration.
- Peptides and cell-penetrating peptides (CPPs): Short amino acid sequences that facilitate the translocation of drugs across cellular membranes and skin layers.
- Biosurfactants and lipid-based carriers (e.g., transfersomes, ethosomes): These mimic natural lipid structures and enhance skin permeability through flexible vesicular systems [12].

Safety and Regulatory Considerations

While permeation enhancers significantly improve transdermal drug delivery, ensuring their safety remains a critical concern. These agents must not cause irreversible damage to the skin barrier, nor induce irritation, sensitization, cytotoxicity, or systemic side effects with repeated or prolonged use. Regulatory authorities such as the FDA and EMA mandate comprehensive safety evaluations, including toxicological profiling, skin irritation studies, and supporting clinical data before approval for transdermal applications. Many chemical enhancers exhibit concentration-dependent toxicity, requiring careful optimization within a narrow therapeutic window. Additionally, cumulative exposure through repeated use may lead to skin sensitization or dermatitis, highlighting the importance of long-term safety data. Moreover, compatibility with other formulation components such as the drug, adhesive matrix, and patch backing materials is essential to ensure both efficacy and user comfort. To meet regulatory and clinical standards, the safety of permeation enhancers must be rigorously assessed through in vitro, ex vivo, and in vivo models, with particular attention to the reversibility of barrier disruption and the preservation of skin integrity over time [13,14].

Fabrication Technologies for Transdermal Patches

The design and fabrication of transdermal patches play a critical role in determining their efficacy, safety, and patient acceptability. Modern fabrication technologies have evolved beyond traditional film-forming techniques to incorporate advanced methods that enable precision drug loading, enhanced permeation, mechanical strength, and flexible design. Selection of fabrication strategy depends on factors such as the physicochemical properties of the drug, desired release profile, and the compatibility with excipients and permeation enhancers. This section outlines key fabrication approaches used in contemporary transdermal patch development, ranging from conventional solvent casting to cutting-edge 3D printing and microneedle integration [15].

Solvent Casting and Matrix Systems

Solvent casting is the most widely used and conventional method for preparing transdermal patches, especially drug-in-matrix systems. This method involves dissolving the drug and polymer(s) in a suitable volatile solvent or solvent mixture, followed by uniform spreading onto a backing membrane and controlled drying to form a thin film. Polymers like Eudragit®, polyvinyl alcohol (PVA), hydroxypropyl methylcellulose (HPMC), and ethyl cellulose are commonly used as matrix formers. The drug is uniformly dispersed or dissolved within the polymer matrix, allowing sustained release. This technique is favored due to its simplicity, cost-effectiveness, and scalability. However, residual solvent toxicity, long drying times, and solvent-polymer compatibility are potential concerns. It is particularly suitable for thermolabile drugs that degrade under high-temperature conditions [16].

Hot-Melt Extrusion

Hot-melt extrusion (HME) is a solvent-free fabrication technique that involves the melting and mixing of polymers with the active drug under controlled temperature and pressure, followed by shaping into films or patches using a die. This continuous process ensures homogenous drug distribution and enables better control over mechanical properties and drug release kinetics. Commonly used thermoplastic polymers for HME include polyethylene oxide (PEO), ethylene-vinyl acetate (EVA), and polycaprolactone (PCL). HME is particularly suitable for poorly water-soluble drugs, offering enhanced solubilization and bioavailability. Additionally, it allows for scale-up with minimal environmental impact, although it may not be ideal for heat-sensitive drugs [17].

Microneedle-Assisted Patch Design

Microneedle patches represent a revolutionary advance in transdermal technology, enabling painless and targeted delivery of drugs across the stratum corneum via micro-scale projections. Microneedles may be solid, coated, dissolving, or hollow, and are often integrated with a patch backing layer for ease of application. Fabrication methods for microneedles include micromolding, photolithography, and electro-drawing, using biocompatible materials such as

polylactic acid (PLA), carboxymethylcellulose (CMC), and hyaluronic acid. These systems are especially effective for delivering vaccines, proteins, peptides, and biologics, which are otherwise difficult to administer through the skin. Moreover, microneedles can be combined with hydrogels, nanoparticles, or smart sensors for enhanced or responsive drug delivery [18].

3D Printing and Additive Manufacturing Approaches

3D printing, or additive manufacturing, has emerged as a cutting-edge technology for fabricating personalized transdermal patches with precise control over drug geometry, spatial distribution, and dose tailoring. Techniques such as fused deposition modeling (FDM), inkjet printing, and stereolithography (SLA) allow the layer-by-layer construction of complex patch architectures. This approach enables on-demand manufacturing, multilayered systems, and multi-drug incorporation with high reproducibility. 3D printing is especially valuable for personalized medicine, pediatric or geriatric populations, and niche applications requiring customized doses or delivery profiles. However, the need for regulatory validation, high-cost equipment, and material constraints remains challenges to widespread adoption [19].

Advances in Adhesive and Backing Layer Technologies

The adhesive and backing layers of a transdermal patch are crucial to its performance, influencing drug release, patch adhesion, skin compatibility, and patient comfort. Recent advances have focused on the development of pressure-sensitive adhesives (PSAs) with enhanced biocompatibility, tackiness, and permeability. Silicone-, acrylic-, and polyisobutylene-based PSAs are commonly employed, with novel strategies incorporating drug-in-adhesive systems, dual-function adhesives, or bioadhesive polymers that allow controlled drug diffusion. The backing layer, typically made of occlusive materials like polyethylene terephthalate (PET) or ethylene vinyl acetate (EVA), protects the formulation and ensures unidirectional drug delivery. Innovations also include flexible, breathable films, stretchable electronics integration, and moisture-resistant barriers, enhancing both functionality and user experience. These advancements ensure that the mechanical and physical attributes of patches align with modern therapeutic and cosmetic needs [20,21].

Characterization and Evaluation of Patches

Thorough characterization and evaluation of transdermal patches are essential to ensure safety, efficacy, stability, and user acceptability. Proper assessment during the development phase helps establish the patch's functional performance, including mechanical integrity, drug release behavior, skin adhesion, and permeation efficiency. Characterization is typically divided into physicomechanical testing, in vitro/ex vivo analyses, and in vivo or clinical studies, each providing critical insights into the formulation's quality and therapeutic performance [22].

Mechanical Properties and Adhesion Testing

Mechanical strength and adhesion performance are crucial for ensuring the patch remains intact and adheres well during the intended period of application. Key parameters assessed include:

- Tensile strength: Measures the patch's resistance to breaking under tension.
- Elongation at break: Indicates flexibility and how much the patch can stretch before failing.
- Young's modulus: Reflects the stiffness or elasticity of the patch matrix.
- Peel strength and tackiness: Determines how easily the patch adheres to and detaches from the skin. These properties are especially important for user comfort and efficacy over extended wear times [23].

In Vitro Permeation Studies

In vitro studies are a cornerstone of patch development, offering predictive insights into how a drug will be released and permeate the skin. The cumulative amount of drug permeated, flux (μg/cm²/h), lag time, and permeability coefficient are key metrics derived from these studies. They help optimize formulation variables such as drug concentration, matrix composition, and permeation enhancers. Commonly used methods include:

- Franz diffusion cells: These static systems consist of a donor and receptor compartment separated by synthetic membranes or excised animal/human skin. They are used to monitor the rate and extent of drug permeation over time.
- Flow-through diffusion cells: These dynamic systems maintain continuous flow in the receptor compartment, more closely simulating in vivo conditions [24].

In Vivo and Clinical Evaluation

Although in vitro studies offer valuable preliminary data, in vivo and clinical evaluations are essential for establishing the safety, bioavailability, and therapeutic efficacy of transdermal patches in humans.

- Animal models (e.g., rodents, pigs) are used initially to assess skin irritation, systemic drug levels, and pharmacokinetics. These models help predict the drug's absorption profile and potential side effects.
- Human volunteer studies assess adhesion performance, skin tolerability, and bioequivalence with existing formulations. Crossover studies are often used to compare the pharmacokinetics of the transdermal patch with oral or injectable routes [25,26].
- Clinical trials provide data on efficacy, long-term safety, patient compliance, and therapeutic outcomes in the target population. These trials are typically conducted in multiple phases (I–III), in accordance with regulatory guidelines from bodies such as the FDA, EMA, and ICH [27].

Recent Applications and Case Studies

Table 1: Recent Applications and Case Studies of Transdermal Patches

Drug/ Active Agent	Therapeutic Area	Formulation Type	Highlights/ Outcomes	Status/ Example
Fentanyl	Pain management	Reservoir-type patch	Provides 72-hour sustained analgesia; avoids GI side effects	Marketed (Duragesic®)
Nicotine	Smoking cessation	Drug-in-adhesive patch	Reduces withdrawal symptoms; step-down dosing strategy	Marketed (NicoDerm CQ®)
Estradiol	Hormone replacement therapy	Matrix patch	Maintains steady hormone levels; improves menopausal symptom control	Marketed (Climara®, Vivelle-Dot®)
Rotigotine	Parkinson's disease	Drug-in-adhesive patch	Continuous dopaminergic stimulation; improves motor symptoms	Marketed (Neupro®)
Rivastigmine	Alzheimer's disease	Matrix patch	Enhances patient compliance; reduces gastrointestinal side effects	Marketed (Exelon® Patch)
Lidocaine	Local analgesia	Hydrogel-based patch	Provides localized pain relief for postherpetic neuralgia	Marketed (Lidoderm®)
Testosterone	Androgen replacement therapy	Matrix or reservoir patch	Stable hormone release; avoids hepatic metabolism	Marketed (Androderm®)
Insulin (Investigational)	Diabetes mellitus	Microneedle-integrated patch	Enables painless, needle-free delivery; under evaluation for controlled insulin release	Preclinical/Clinical Trials
Vaccines (e.g., flu, COVID-19)	Infectious disease prevention	Dissolving microneedle patch	Thermostable, self-administrable; promising for mass immunization	Under clinical development
Cannabidiol (CBD)	Neuropathic pain, anxiety	Matrix-type patch	Non-psychoactive; transdermal route improves bioavailability over oral forms	Marketed and in clinical testing

Future Perspectives and Challenges

The future of transdermal drug delivery is being shaped by the convergence of nanotechnology, bioengineering, and personalized medicine. Next-generation patches are expected to go beyond passive delivery, incorporating smart systems capable of responsive drug release, real-time physiological monitoring, and data transmission via wearable electronics. These "smart patches" hold great potential in chronic disease management, such as diabetes, hypertension, and neurological disorders, by integrating biosensors and feedback mechanisms to optimize dosing [28]. Moreover, microneedle-assisted patches and 3D-printed formulations are paving the way for self-administered vaccines, biologic delivery, and pediatric-specific applications. The use of biodegradable materials, biosurfactants, and stimuli-responsive polymers will likely expand the scope of drugs that can be delivered transdermally, including large molecules like peptides, proteins, and nucleic acids. Despite these promising advancements, several challenges persist. Skin variability among individuals, long-term safety of permeation enhancers, and inconsistent drug absorption across anatomical sites remain unresolved. Additionally, the limited number of drugs amenable to transdermal delivery and strict regulatory pathways continue to hinder broader application. High manufacturing costs, complex fabrication processes, and the need for robust stability data further complicate product development and commercialization. Addressing these challenges will require interdisciplinary collaboration, advances in materials science, and supportive regulatory frameworks. Nonetheless, with continued innovation, transdermal patches are expected to play a pivotal role in next-generation therapeutic systems, combining convenience, precision, and patient-centric care [29].

Conclusion:

Transdermal patches have revolutionized drug delivery by offering a non-invasive, controlled, and patient-friendly route of administration. Despite the formidable barrier posed by the stratum corneum, significant progress has been made in overcoming this challenge through the use of chemical, physical, and biological permeation enhancers. These strategies have expanded the range of drugs suitable for transdermal delivery, including those previously restricted by molecular size or solubility constraints. Parallel advancements in fabrication technologies from traditional solvent casting to modern methods like hot-melt extrusion, microneedles, and 3D printing have enabled the development of highly customizable and effective patch systems. Furthermore, innovations in adhesives and backing materials have improved patch adhesion, wearability, and patient comfort. Characterization techniques, including mechanical testing, in vitro permeation, and in vivo evaluation, continue to provide critical data to guide formulation design and ensure product quality. Real-world success stories and marketed products across diverse therapeutic areas from pain management and hormone replacement to neurodegenerative diseases validate the clinical and commercial impact of transdermal patches. As the field

advances, integration with smart technologies, biosensors, and personalized medicine platforms will likely redefine the potential of transdermal systems. With continued research and regulatory support, transdermal patches are poised to play an increasingly central role in next-generation drug delivery strategies.

References:

1. Patel BA. Permeation enhancement and advanced strategies: A comprehensive review of improved topical drug delivery. International Research Journal of Modernization in Engineering Technology and Science. 2024;6(05):6691-702.
2. Hmingthansanga V, Singh N, Banerjee S, Manickam S, Velayutham R, Natesan S. Improved topical drug delivery: Role of permeation enhancers and advanced approaches. Pharmaceutics. 2022 Dec 15;14(12):2818.
3. Marwah H, Garg T, Goyal AK, Rath G. Permeation enhancer strategies in transdermal drug delivery. Drug delivery. 2016 Feb 12;23(2):564-78.
4. Kováčik A, Kopečná M, Vávrová K. Permeation enhancers in transdermal drug delivery: Benefits and limitations. Expert opinion on drug delivery. 2020 Feb 1;17(2):145-55.
5. Panda P, Mohanty T, Mohapatra R. Advancements in Transdermal Drug Delivery Systems: Harnessing the Potential of Macromolecular Assisted Permeation Enhancement and Novel Techniques. AAPS PharmSciTech. 2025 Jan 9;26(1):29.
6. Bird D, Ravindra NM. Transdermal drug delivery and patches—An overview. Medical Devices & Sensors. 2020 Dec;3(6):e10069.
7. Gao Y, Du L, Li Q, Li Q, Zhu L, Yang M, Wang X, Zhao B, Ma S. How physical techniques improve the transdermal permeation of therapeutics: A review. Medicine. 2022 Jul 1;101(26):e29314.
8. Vaseem RS, D'cruz A, Shetty S, Vardhan A, Shenoy S, Marques SM, Kumar L, Verma R. Transdermal drug delivery systems: a focused review of the physical methods of permeation enhancement. Advanced Pharmaceutical Bulletin. 2023 Oct 14;14(1):67.
9. Wong WF, Ang KP, Sethi G, Looi CY. Recent advancement of medical patch for transdermal drug delivery. Medicina. 2023 Apr 17;59(4):778.
10. Ramadon D, McCrudden MT, Courtenay AJ, Donnelly RF. Enhancement strategies for transdermal drug delivery systems: Current trends and applications. Drug delivery and translational research. 2022 Apr 1:1-34.
11. Sharma N, Sharma S, Kaushik R. Formulation and evaluation of lornoxicam transdermal patches using various permeation enhancers. International Journal of Drug Delivery Technology. 2019 Dec 22;9(4):597-607.

12. Rana R, Saroha K, Handa U, Kumar A, Nanda S. Transdermal Patches as a tool for permeation of drug through skin. Journal of Chemical and Pharmaceutical Research. 2016;8(5):471-81.
13. Mamatha J, Gadili S, Pallavi K. Formulation and evaluation of zidovudine transdermal patch using permeation enhancers. Journal of Young Pharmacists. 2020;12(2s):s45.
14. Chandan S, Nishant T, Bhupinder K, Manish G. Recent advancements in transdermal patches: Literature review. International Journal of Health Sciences. 2022(I):6443-60.
15. Kulkarni P, Ahmed KA, Shirsand SB, Raikar PK, Hiraskar A. Transdermal Patches: Design, Evaluation, and Potential Applications in Modern Therapeutics. Biomedical Materials & Devices. 2025 May 16:1-9.
16. Alkilani AZ, Nasereddin J, Hamed R, Nimrawi S, Hussein G, Abo-Zour H, Donnelly RF. Beneath the skin: A review of current trends and future prospects of transdermal drug delivery systems. Pharmaceutics. 2022 May 28;14(6):1152.
17. Akhtar N, Singh V, Yusuf M, Khan RA. Non-invasive drug delivery technology: Development and current status of transdermal drug delivery devices, techniques and biomedical applications. Biomedical Engineering/Biomedizinische Technik. 2020 May 26;65(3):243-72.
18. Anurova MN, Demina NB, Bakhrushina EO. Permeability enhancers in transdermal delivery system technology. Pharmaceutical Chemistry Journal. 2021 Feb;54:1162-8.
19. Kim EJ, Choi DH. Quality by design approach to the development of transdermal patch systems and regulatory perspective. Journal of Pharmaceutical Investigation. 2021 Nov;51(6):669-90.
20. Das S, Das S, Bahadur S, Mukherjee M, Nandi G, Manna S. Fabrication, evaluation, and enhanced penetration of vinyl and cellulose-engineered transdermal patch of nifedipine using essential oil as penetration enhancer. Journal of Biomaterials Science, Polymer Edition. 2024 Jun 12;35(9):1400-20.
21. Phatale V, Vaiphei KK, Jha S, Patil D, Agrawal M, Alexander A. Overcoming skin barriers through advanced transdermal drug delivery approaches. Journal of controlled release. 2022 Nov 1;351:361-80.
22. Jafri I, Shoaib MH, Yousuf RI, Ali FR. Effect of permeation enhancers on in vitro release and transdermal delivery of lamotrigine from Eudragit® RS100 polymer matrix-type drug in adhesive patches. Progress in Biomaterials. 2019 Jun;8:91-100.
23. Parhi R, Mandru A. Enhancement of skin permeability with thermal ablation techniques: concept to commercial products. Drug delivery and translational research. 2021 Jun;11:817-41.

24. Szunerits S, Boukherroub R. Heat: a highly efficient skin enhancer for transdermal drug delivery. Frontiers in bioengineering and biotechnology. 2018 Feb 15;6:15.
25. Kathuria T, Saharan R, Dhankhar S, Mahajan S, Beniwal SK, Chauhan S, Dahiya P, Verma I, Yasmin S. Transdermal Drug Delivery Systems: Integrating Modern Technology for Enhanced Therapeutics. Current Drug Safety. 2025 Feb 11.
26. Amjadi M, Mostaghaci B, Sitti M. Recent advances in skin penetration enhancers for transdermal gene and drug delivery. Current gene therapy. 2017 Apr 1;17(2):139-46.
27. Sidat Z, Marimuthu T, Kumar P, du Toit LC, Kondiah PP, Choonara YE, Pillay V. Ionic liquids as potential and synergistic permeation enhancers for transdermal drug delivery. Pharmaceutics. 2019 Feb 22;11(2):96.
28. Farooqui H, Upadhyay S, Upadhyay P. Transdermal patches approach towards self-nano-emulsifying drug delivery system (SNEDDS) using essential oil as penetration enhancer. Micro and Nanosystems. 2022 Dec 1;14(4):314-40.
29. Nayak BS, Mohanty B, Mishra B, Roy H, Nandi S. Transethosomes: Cutting edge approach for drug permeation enhancement in transdermal drug delivery system. Chemical Biology & Drug Design. 2023 Sep;102(3):653-67.

COMPREHENSIVE REVIEW OF NEUROBLASTOMA IN CHILDREN

Kailshgiri I Goswami
Department of General Surgery,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Vadodara, Gujarat

Abstract:
Neuroblastoma (NB) represents the most prevalent extracranial solid malignancy in the paediatric population, accounting for approximately 8–10% of all childhood cancers and a significant proportion of cancer-related mortality in infants. Classified as an embryonal neuroendocrine neoplasm, NB arises from neural crest-derived progenitor cells, which are precursors of the sympathetic nervous system. Consequently, the tumour may originate anywhere along the sympathetic chain, including but not limited to the superior cervical, paraspinal, and celiac ganglia, with the adrenal medulla being the most common primary site. The clinical manifestation of NB is remarkably heterogeneous, largely influenced by the tumour's site of origin, extent of metastatic dissemination, and biologic behaviour. Presenting features range from an asymptomatic, incidentally discovered abdominal mass to severe, life-threatening symptoms resulting from widespread metastasis, including bone pain, pancytopenia, periorbital ecchymoses, and paraneoplastic syndromes such as opsoclonus-myoclonus-ataxia. Pathophysiologic ally, NB is characterized by complex genetic and molecular aberrations, including MYCN amplification, ALK mutations, and chromosomal rearrangements, which play pivotal roles in tumorigenesis, prognosis, and therapeutic response. Effective management of neuroblastoma requires a multidisciplinary approach encompassing surgery, chemotherapy, radiotherapy, immunotherapy, and autologous stem cell transplantation. Coordination among paediatric oncologists, radiologists, pathologists, surgeons, and supportive care teams is vital for optimizing clinical outcomes, improving survival rates, and enhancing quality of life for affected children.

Objectives:

- Elucidate the pathophysiological mechanisms underlying neuroblastoma.
- Characterize the diverse clinical presentations associated with neuroblastoma.
- Outline current and emerging therapeutic modalities for neuroblastoma.
- Discuss strategies to enhance interprofessional collaboration and care coordination to improve patient-cantered outcomes in neuroblastoma management.

Introduction:

Neuroblastoma (NB) represents the most common extracranial solid malignancy in the paediatric population and is classified as an embryonal neuroendocrine tumour derived from neural crest progenitor cells. Given its origin, NB can manifest at any site along the sympathetic nervous

system, including the superior cervical, paraspinal, and celiac ganglia, with a predilection for the adrenal medulla, which accounts for the majority of primary tumour sites. The clinical presentation of neuroblastoma is highly heterogeneous, with symptomatology ranging from an asymptomatic, palpable abdominal mass to severe, systemic illness resulting from extensive metastatic dissemination.

Despite advances in multimodal treatment strategies, including surgery, chemotherapy, radiation therapy, and immunotherapy, prognosis remains highly variable and closely linked to the biologic and molecular features of the tumour. While low-risk neuroblastoma subtypes exhibit favourable outcomes with excellent long-term survival, high-risk variants are associated with poor prognosis and limited therapeutic efficacy, despite aggressive treatment. Recent epidemiological analyses have highlighted this disparity, revealing significant improvements in five-year event-free survival among low-risk cohorts, but only marginal gains in survival for high-risk patients. This stark contrast underscores the urgent need for precision oncology approaches, including the development of molecularly targeted therapies, to improve outcomes and reduce treatment-related morbidity in high-risk neuroblastoma populations.

Etiology

The etiological landscape of neuroblastoma (NB) remains incompletely defined, with no definitive environmental or endogenous risk factors conclusively linked to the acquisition of somatic mutations driving tumourigenesis. Nonetheless, perinatal exposures—including those during conception and gestation—remain areas of active investigation, as their potential role in influencing neural crest development and genomic stability has yet to be fully elucidated.

Neuroblastoma may occur sporadically or as a result of inherited genetic predisposition. Although familial neuroblastoma represents a minority of cases, it is often attributable to germline mutations in genes critical to neural development and oncogenesis. Most notably, highly penetrant mutations in the *ALK* (anaplastic lymphoma kinase) and *PHOX2B* (paired-like homeobox 2b) genes have been implicated in hereditary NB, with familial cases typically following an autosomal dominant inheritance pattern, albeit with variable expressivity.

In sporadic neuroblastoma, somatic mutations in *ALK* are detected in approximately 15% of cases. However, more commonly, the disease is associated with risk-modifying polymorphisms in genes such as *BARD1*, *LIN28B*, and *FLJ22536*. Cytogenetically, NB is characterized by recurrent chromosomal abnormalities, including deletions of 1p and 11q, gain of 17q, and copy number alterations at 1q21. Among these, *MYCN* amplification—present in roughly 25% of patients—is a well-established marker of aggressive disease and poor prognosis, often occurring concurrently with 1p loss and 17q gain. These genetic and cytogenetic alterations collectively influence tumour behaviour, risk stratification, and therapeutic decision-making in clinical practice.

Epidemiology

Neuroblastoma is the most prevalent neoplasm of the sympathetic nervous system, accounting for approximately 97% of tumours arising from this lineage, and it stands as the most common malignancy diagnosed during infancy. The median age at diagnosis is approximately 17 months, reflecting its predilection for early childhood presentation. Despite being a rare disease in the general population, neuroblastoma carries a disproportionately high burden in paediatric oncology, contributing to nearly 15% of all cancer-related deaths in children.

In the United States, the estimated annual incidence of neuroblastoma is approximately 650 new cases, corresponding to an incidence rate of 10.2 per million children and 65 per million infants. Importantly, epidemiological data indicate that this incidence has remained relatively stable over time, with a marginal average annual percentage change of 0.4%.

Although longitudinal analyses have demonstrated improvements in five-year overall survival rates between 1975 and 2005, these gains are not uniformly distributed across all risk categories. Children with low- and intermediate-risk neuroblastoma benefit from excellent prognoses and high survival rates. In contrast, high-risk neuroblastoma remains associated with poor outcomes despite aggressive multimodal therapy, underscoring the persistent need for more effective and targeted therapeutic strategies within this subgroup.

Pathophysiology

A wide array of biological markers has been identified in neuroblastoma, contributing significantly to risk stratification, prognostication, and therapeutic decision-making. Among these, MYCN amplification stands out as the most clinically relevant genetic aberration. Present in approximately 25% of neuroblastoma cases, MYCN amplification is strongly associated with advanced-stage disease, rapid tumour progression, resistance to conventional therapies, and poor overall survival. It serves as a critical determinant for high-risk classification, regardless of patient age or tumour stage.

Conversely, H-Ras gene expression has been correlated with low-stage, more indolent disease and favourable outcomes. Another important prognostic parameter is the DNA index, a measure of ploidy; patients with a DNA index >1 (hyper diploid tumours) tend to respond more favourably to chemotherapeutic agents such as doxorubicin and cyclophosphamide compared to those with diploid tumours (DNA index <1), who often exhibit treatment resistance and poorer prognosis.

Additional adverse prognostic biomarkers include the absence of CD44 glycoprotein expression and elevated levels of telomerase RNA, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), serum ferritin, and neuron-specific enolase (NSE). Biochemically, nearly 90% of neuroblastoma patients exhibit elevated urinary catecholamine metabolites, namely vanillylmandelic acid (VMA) and Hom vanillic acid (HVA)—a diagnostic hallmark exploited in screening programs, particularly in

Japan, where mass urinary catecholamine screening has been associated with reduced mortality from high-risk disease.

Neuroblastomas most frequently originate in the adrenal medulla, but can also arise from paraspinal sympathetic ganglia, and less commonly from thoracic, pelvic, or cervical regions. Clinical presentation varies with age and tumour location. Infants often present with cervical or thoracic masses, whereas older children typically manifest abdominal masses, frequently associated with increased abdominal girth and pain. Lesions with intraspinal extension may cause spinal cord compression, resulting in neurological deficits such as limb weakness or paralysis. Thus, the symptomatology is largely attributable to tumour mass effect and anatomical site of origin.

Histopathology

Histopathological examination of neuroblastoma characteristically reveals small, round, blue cells with hyperchromatic nuclei and scant cytoplasm, a classic appearance shared with other paediatric small round blue cell tumours. These neoplastic cells typically infiltrate the connective tissue in a disorganized pattern, often forming clusters or sheets. A hallmark feature, although not universally present, is the formation of Homer Wright pseudo rosettes—tumour cells arranged in a circular pattern around a central area of neuropil (fibrillary eosinophilic material). These pseudo rosettes are observed in approximately 10–15% of neuroblastoma cases and are indicative of partial neuroplastic differentiation.

Unlike true rosettes (e.g., Flexner-Winter Steiner rosettes seen in retinoblastoma), Homer Wright pseudo rosettes lack a true central lumen. Their presence, while not pathognomonic, supports the diagnosis of neuroblastoma when seen in conjunction with clinical, radiologic, and immunohistochemical findings. Additional histologic variants, such as ganglion neuro blastoma or ganglioneuroma, may exhibit greater cellular differentiation with the presence of mature ganglion cells and Schwan Nian stroma, correlating with a more favourable prognosis.

History and Physical

Given the extensive distribution of neural crest-derived tissues, neuroblastoma can arise at various anatomical locations, most commonly in the abdomen, but also in the neck, chest, and pelvis. The adrenal medulla remains the predominant site of origin, and patients frequently present with a firm, non-tender abdominal mass, often accompanied by increased abdominal girth. Involvement of the superior cervical ganglia may manifest not only as a cervical mass, but also with Horner syndrome, characterized by ptosis, miosis, and anhidrosis, due to disruption of sympathetic innervation.

Extension of the tumour into the spinal canal can result in spinal cord compression, leading to motor deficits, weakness, or even paralysis. Neuroblastoma exhibits a broad spectrum of biological behaviour, ranging from spontaneous regression, especially in infants, to aggressive

metastatic dissemination at initial diagnosis. More than 50% of patients present with evidence of hematogenous metastases, primarily involving the bone (56%), bone marrow (71%), lymph nodes (31%), and less frequently, the lungs (3%).

Clinical manifestations are heterogeneous and largely determined by tumour location and metastatic burden. Non-specific systemic symptoms such as fever, weight loss, and fatigue are common. Bone metastases often result in pain, limping, or pathological fractures. Thoracic tumours may similarly present with Horner syndrome. Though rare, chronic secretory diarrheal may be the initial symptom due to vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP) production by the tumour.

Importantly, hypertension is uncommon and, when present, is typically due to renal artery compression rather than direct catecholamine excess. A unique paraneoplastic presentation involves opsoclonus-myoclonus syndrome (OMS)—a rare neurologic disorder marked by chaotic eye movements (opsoclonus) and myoclonic jerks. Patients with OMS often have localized tumours and a favourable oncologic prognosis, but may suffer from persistent neurologic deficits, including cognitive and motor impairments. This diverse and often non-specific clinical presentation underscores the importance of maintaining a high index of suspicion, particularly in infants and young children presenting with unexplained systemic or neurologic symptoms.

Evaluation

The diagnostic assessment of neuroblastoma necessitates a comprehensive, multidisciplinary approach incorporating detailed clinical history, thorough physical examination, and a battery of biochemical, histopathological, and radiological investigations. Initial laboratory evaluations should include complete blood count (CBC), renal and hepatic function tests, serum electrolytes, and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), the latter serving as a surrogate marker for tumour burden and cellular turnover.

Definitive diagnosis requires histological confirmation through biopsy. Microscopically, neuroblastoma is characterized by small, round, pale blue cells, frequently arranged in Homer Wright pseudo rosettes, consisting of tumour cells encircling neuropil-rich fibrillary centres. These features are shared with other paediatric malignancies such as Wilms tumour and Ewing sarcoma, collectively referred to as "small round blue cell tumours." Once a tumour-positive biopsy is obtained, additional molecular analyses are warranted to assess DNA ploidy and MYCN amplification status, both of which carry critical prognostic significance.

Given their origin from neural crest-derived sympathetic precursors, neuroblastoma cells often secrete catecholamines, with over 90% of cases exhibiting elevated urinary concentrations of their metabolites—Hom vanillic acid (HVA) and vanillylmandelic acid (VMA)—which serve as highly sensitive diagnostic biomarkers.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is preferred for initial tumour localization and preoperative planning due to its superior soft tissue resolution. If there is clinical suspicion of spinal cord compression or Horner syndrome, spinal MRI is imperative. Moreover, computed tomography (CT) of the chest and abdomen is valuable for identifying tumour calcifications and detecting metastatic spread.

To assess the extent of disease dissemination, metaiodobenzylguanidine (mIBG) scintigraphy is employed. Owing to its structural similarity to norepinephrine, mIBG is selectively taken up by sympathetic neurons, allowing for sensitive and specific visualization of both primary and metastatic lesions. In cases where mIBG uptake is insufficient, fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography (FDG-PET) may be considered. Bone marrow aspiration and biopsy are essential components of staging, particularly given the high frequency of marrow involvement in advanced disease.

Additional investigations include skeletal surveys for osseous metastases, baseline electrocardiography (ECG) and echocardiography to evaluate cardiac function prior to the initiation of cardiotoxic chemotherapeutics (e.g., doxorubicin), and baseline audiometric testing, especially before administering cisplatin, due to its potential for ototoxicity.

Importantly, clinicians must remain vigilant for paraneoplastic syndromes associated with neuroblastoma, including opsoclonus-myoclonus-ataxia syndrome (OMAS), a rare immune-mediated neurologic disorder, and intractable secretory diarrhoea secondary to vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP) secretion, both of which may present as initial manifestations of disease.

Staging

The International Neuroblastoma Staging System (INSS) is the most widely utilized framework for staging neuroblastoma in the United States. This system is surgically based and classifies disease extent based on the completeness of tumour resection and the presence of metastatic spread. Accurate staging via INSS is essential for prognostication and therapeutic decision-making.

- **Stage 1:** The tumour is localized and has undergone complete gross excision, although microscopic residual disease may be present. Ipsilateral lymph nodes are histologically negative for tumour involvement.
- **Stage 2A:** The tumour remains localized, but gross total excision has not been achieved. Despite incomplete resection, ipsilateral lymph nodes remain free of malignancy.
- **Stage 2B:** The tumour is localized and grossly excised, but ipsilateral lymph nodes are histologically positive for tumour. Contralateral lymph nodes are not involved.
- **Stage 3:** The disease is considered unresectable, with tumour extension across the midline or involvement of regional lymph nodes. Alternatively, a unilateral localized tumour with contralateral lymph node involvement also qualifies as Stage 3.

- **Stage 4:** This stage indicates disseminated disease, regardless of the primary tumour's location, with metastases to distant lymph nodes, bone marrow, liver, or skin.
- **Stage 4S ("Special" Stage):** Unique to infants under 12 months, this stage involves a localized primary tumour (as in Stage 1 or 2) with metastases limited to the liver, skin, or bone marrow. Importantly, bone marrow involvement must be minimal (<10%), and bone involvement is absent. Despite metastatic spread, Stage 4S carries a favourable prognosis, often with potential for spontaneous regression.

Enhancing Healthcare Team Outcomes

Neuroblastoma, although a rare abdominal malignancy in young children, carries a high mortality risk if not promptly diagnosed and treated. Optimal management necessitates a coordinated, interprofessional team approach comprising paediatricians, paediatric surgeons, oncologists, radiation therapists, social workers, pharmacists, dietitians, and specialized nursing staff. Given the unique physiological and psychosocial needs of podiatric oncology patients, a dedicated childhood cancer care team is essential to deliver holistic, age-appropriate treatment.

The tumour’s origin along the sympathetic nervous system predisposes to diagnostic challenges, as neuroblastoma may clinically and radiographically mimic other pediatric abdominal tumours such as Wilms tumour. Oncologic pharmacists play a crucial role in optimizing chemotherapy regimens, monitoring for drug-drug interactions, and providing tailored education to patients and families to enhance adherence and safety.

Specialized oncology nurses and nurse practitioners are integral to patient monitoring, symptom management, and caregiver support throughout the treatment continuum. Given the potential for neuroblastoma or its treatment to cause neurological deficits and impair motor function, occupational therapy is often warranted to support rehabilitation and functional independence.

Nutritional support is critical, as oncologic therapies frequently impair growth and appetite; thus, early involvement of dietitians helps mitigate treatment-related malnutrition and supports optimal development. Maintaining a positive, supportive environment is paramount for the child’s psychological well-being and resilience.

Effective patient care hinges on transparent, continuous communication among all team members, fostering collaborative decision-making and ensuring comprehensive, patient-centered management.

Over the past decade, the survival of these patients has slightly improved for early-stage lesions, but for late stages, the survival is abysmal. Thus, the impetus for the development of targeted therapeutics in the intensive management of high-risk groups is strong.

References:

1. Althoff K, Beckers A, Bell E, Nortmeyer M, Thor T, Sprüssel A, Lindner S, De Preter K, Florin A, Heukamp LC, Klein-Hitpass L, Astrahantseff K, Kumps C, Speleman F, Eggert A, Westermann F, Schramm A, Schulte JH. A Cre-conditional MYCN-driven neuroblastoma mouse model as an improved tool for preclinical studies. Oncogene. 2015 Jun;34(26):3357-68.
2. Baker DL, Schmidt ML, Cohn SL, Maris JM, London WB, Buxton A, Stram D, Castleberry RP, Shimada H, Sandler A, Shamberger RC, Look AT, Reynolds CP, Seeger RC, Matthay KK., Children's Oncology Group. Outcome after reduced chemotherapy for intermediate-risk neuroblastoma. N Engl J Med. 2010 Sep 30;363(14):1313-23.
3. Bansal D, Totadri S, Chinnaswamy G, Agarwala S, Vora T, Arora B, Prasad M, Kapoor G, Radhakrishnan V, Laskar S, Kaur T, Rath GK, Bakhshi S. Management of Neuroblastoma: ICMR Consensus Document. Indian J Pediatr. 2017 Jun;84(6):446-455.
4. Brunklaus A, Pohl K, Zuberi SM, de Sousa C. Investigating neuroblastoma in childhood opsoclonus-myoclonus syndrome. Arch Dis Child. 2012 May;97(5):461-3.
5. Capasso M, Devoto M, Hou C, Asgharzadeh S, Glessner JT, Attiyeh EF, Mosse YP, Kim C, Diskin SJ, Cole KA, Bosse K, Diamond M, Laudenslager M, Winter C, Bradfield JP, Scott RH, Jagannathan J, Garris M, McConville C, London WB, Seeger RC, Grant SF, Li H, Rahman N, Rappaport E, Hakonarson H, Maris JM. Common variations in BARD1 influence susceptibility to high-risk neuroblastoma. Nat Genet. 2009 Jun;41(6):718-23.
6. Cohn SL, Pearson AD, London WB, Monclair T, Ambros PF, Brodeur GM, Faldum A, Hero B, Iehara T, Machin D, Mosseri V, Simon T, Garaventa A, Castel V, Matthay KK., INRG Task Force. The International Neuroblastoma Risk Group (INRG) classification system: an INRG Task Force report. J Clin Oncol. 2009 Jan 10;27(2):289-97.
7. Diskin SJ, Capasso M, Schnepp RW, Cole KA, Attiyeh EF, Hou C, Diamond M, Carpenter EL, Winter C, Lee H, Jagannathan J, Latorre V, Iolascon A, Hakonarson H, Devoto M, Maris JM. Common variation at 6q16 within HACE1 and LIN28B influences susceptibility to neuroblastoma. Nat Genet. 2012 Oct;44(10):1126-30.
8. Heukamp LC, Thor T, Schramm A, De Preter K, Kumps C, De Wilde B, Odersky A, Peifer M, Lindner S, Spruessel A, Pattyn F, Mestdagh P, Menten B, Kuhfittig-Kulle S, Künkele A, König K, Meder L, Chatterjee S, Ullrich RT, Schulte S, Vandesompele J, Speleman F, Büttner R, Eggert A, Schulte JH. Targeted expression of mutated ALK

induces neuroblastoma in transgenic mice. Sci Transl Med. 2012 Jul 04;4(141):141ra91.

9. Kaplan SJ, Holbrook CT, McDaniel HG, Buntain WL, Crist WM. Vasoactive intestinal peptide secreting tumours of childhood. Am J Dis Child. 1980 Jan;134(1):21-4.
10. Knudson AG, Strong LC. Mutation and cancer: neuroblastoma and pheochromocytoma. Am J Hum Genet. 1972 Sep;24(5):514-32.
11. LaBrosse EH, Com-Nougué C, Zucker JM, Comoy E, Bohuon C, Lemerle J, Schweisguth O. Urinary excretion of 3-methoxy-4-hydroxymandelic acid and 3-methoxy-4-hydroxyphenylacetic acid by 288 patients with neuroblastoma and related neural crest tumours. Cancer Res. 1980 Jun;40(6):1995-2001.
12. Linabery AM, Ross JA. Childhood and adolescent cancer survival in the US by race and ethnicity for the diagnostic period 1975-1999. Cancer. 2008 Nov 01;113(9):2575-96.
13. London WB, Castleberry RP, Matthay KK, Look AT, Seeger RC, Shimada H, Thorner P, Brodeur G, Maris JM, Reynolds CP, Cohn SL. Evidence for an age cutoff greater than 365 days for neuroblastoma risk group stratification in the Children's Oncology Group. J Clin Oncol. 2005 Sep 20;23(27):6459-65.
14. Maris JM, Hogarty MD, Bagatell R, Cohn SL. Neuroblastoma. Lancet. 2007 Jun 23;369(9579):2106-20.
15. Maris JM, Mosse YP, Bradfield JP, Hou C, Monni S, Scott RH, Asgharzadeh S, Attiyeh EF, Diskin SJ, Laudenslager M, Winter C, Cole KA, Glessner JT, Kim C, Frackelton EC, Casalunovo T, Eckert AW, Capasso M, Rappaport EF, McConville C, London WB, Seeger RC, Rahman N, Devoto M, Grant SF, Li H, Hakonarson H. Chromosome 6p22 locus associated with clinically aggressive neuroblastoma. N Engl J Med. 2008 Jun 12;358(24):2585-93.
16. Maris JM. Recent advances in neuroblastoma. N Engl J Med. 2010 Jun 10;362(23):2202-11.
17. Matthay KK, Maris JM, Schleiermacher G, Nakagawara A, Mackall CL, Diller L, Weiss WA. Neuroblastoma. Nat Rev Dis Primers. 2016 Nov 10;2:16078.
18. Matthay KK. Stage 4S neuroblastoma: what makes it special? J Clin Oncol. 1998 Jun;16(6):2003-6.
19. Mossé YP, Laudenslager M, Longo L, Cole KA, Wood A, Attiyeh EF, Laquaglia MJ, Sennett R, Lynch JE, Perri P, Laureys G, Speleman F, Kim C, Hou C, Hakonarson H, Torkamani A, Schork NJ, Brodeur GM, Tonini GP, Rappaport E, Devoto M, Maris JM. Identification of ALK as a major familial neuroblastoma predisposition gene. Nature. 2008 Oct 16;455(7215):930-5.

20. Park JR, Bagatell R, London WB, Maris JM, Cohn SL, Mattay KK, Hogarty M., COG Neuroblastoma Committee. Children's Oncology Group's 2013 blueprint for research: neuroblastoma. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2013 Jun;60(6):985-93.
21. Vik TA, Pfluger T, Kadota R, Castel V, Tulchinsky M, Farto JC, Heiba S, Serafini A, Tumeh S, Khutoryansky N, Jacobson AF. (123)I-mIBG scintigraphy in patients with known or suspected neuroblastoma: Results from a prospective multicenter trial. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2009 Jul;52(7):784-90.
22. Yu AL, Gilman AL, Ozkaynak MF, London WB, Kreissman SG, Chen HX, Smith M, Anderson B, Villablanca JG, Matthay KK, Shimada H, Grupp SA, Seeger R, Reynolds CP, Buxton A, Reisfeld RA, Gillies SD, Cohn SL, Maris JM, Sondel PM., Children's Oncology Group. Anti-GD2 antibody with GM-CSF, interleukin-2, and isotretinoin for neuroblastoma. N Engl J Med. 2010 Sep 30;363(14):1324-34.
23. Zage PE. Novel Therapies for Relapsed and Refractory Neuroblastoma. Children (Basel). 2018 Oct 31;5(11)

PHARMACEUTICAL REAGENTS: ROLES, SAFETY, REGULATORY ASPECTS, AND GREEN INNOVATIONS

Shivkant Patel*[1], Dillip Kumar Dash[1], Krupa Joshi[1], Surabhi Jain[2]

[1]Department of Pharmacy,

Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia 391760, Vadodara, Gujarat

[2]Monark Goswami College of Pharmacy Gandhinagar, Gujarat

*Corresponding author E-mail : shivapatel2609@gmail.com

Abstract:

Reagents are indispensable components in pharmaceutical chemistry, serving crucial functions in drug synthesis, analytical evaluation, and formulation development. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of the classification, selection, and application of reagents within pharmaceutical laboratories and manufacturing processes. Emphasis is placed on the role of reagents in organic synthesis and quality control, their safe handling and storage, and compliance with regulatory standards including GMP, GLP, and pharmacopeial requirements. Additionally, the chapter explores recent advances in green chemistry, highlighting the emergence of environmentally friendly reagents and sustainable practices aimed at reducing toxicity and waste. By integrating traditional knowledge with modern innovations, this chapter aims to support safe, efficient, and eco-conscious use of reagents in the pharmaceutical sciences.

Keywords: Pharmaceutical Reagents, Drug Synthesis, Analytical Reagents, Good Manufacturing Practices (GMP), Reagent Safety, Regulatory Compliance, Green Chemistry, Biocatalysts, Sustainable Reagents

1. Introduction:

In pharmaceutical chemistry, reagents serve as the cornerstone of various chemical transformations that are essential for the development of active pharmaceutical ingredients (APIs), as well as for their subsequent analysis and formulation into safe, effective drug products. A reagent can be defined as a substance or a mixture of substances that is intentionally introduced into a system to bring about a specific chemical reaction. This reaction may involve the transformation of a starting material into a more complex molecule, the derivatization of a compound to enhance its detectability, or the breakdown of substances for analytical quantification. The application of reagents spans across multiple domains in pharmaceutical research and production. During drug synthesis, reagents are crucial for constructing the molecular frameworks of pharmaceutical compounds through various reactions such as oxidation, reduction, substitution, and coupling. In analytical chemistry, reagents are employed in both qualitative and quantitative assessments to detect the presence of specific functional

groups, ions, or impurities, thereby ensuring the identity, purity, and strength of pharmaceutical substances. Moreover, in formulation development, certain reagents may be used to stabilize the active ingredients or to enhance their solubility and bioavailability. The selection of appropriate reagents is a critical step that depends on several factors including chemical reactivity, selectivity towards targets functional groups, compatibility with other reaction components, cost-effectiveness, and environmental or safety concerns. From a regulatory perspective, the use of reagents must also align with pharmacopoeial standards and ICH (International Council for Harmonisation) guidelines, especially when residues may remain in the final product. Hence, reagents must be selected not only based on their performance but also on their toxicological profile, ease of removal, and compliance with Good Manufacturing Practices (GMP) [1].

2. Classification of Reagents

Reagents used in pharmaceutical chemistry can be categorized based on their function, chemical nature, and the type of reaction they are involved in. Understanding this classification helps in selecting the appropriate reagent for a specific chemical or analytical process. Below is a detailed classification:

2.1 Analytical Reagents

These reagents are used primarily for qualitative and quantitative determination of pharmaceutical substances. They help detect the presence of specific ions, functional groups, or entire molecules through color changes, precipitate formation, or complexation [2].

- *Examples:*
    - Fehling's Solution: Used to detect reducing sugars.
    - Benedict's Reagent: Identifies glucose in biological fluids.
    - Ninhydrin: Detects amino acids and proteins.
    - Molisch's Reagent: General test for carbohydrates.
    - Ferric Chloride Solution: Detects phenolic groups.

2.2 Synthetic Reagents

Synthetic reagents are used in the preparation or modification of drug molecules. They participate in reactions such as substitution, addition, hydrolysis, or rearrangement to form active pharmaceutical ingredients (APIs) or intermediates [3].

- *Examples:*
    - Grignard Reagents (RMgX): For carbon-carbon bond formation.
    - Acetyl Chloride: Used in acetylation reactions.
    - Sodium Azide (NaN_3): Used in nucleophilic substitution reactions.
    - Phosgene: Used in isocyanate and carbamate synthesis.

2.3 Protecting Group Reagents

These reagents are used to temporarily block functional groups that may otherwise interfere with specific reactions. After the desired transformation, the protecting group is removed (deprotected) to regenerate the original functionality.

- *Examples:*
    - Boc-Anhydride (tert-Butyloxycarbonyl): Protects amine groups.
    - TBDMS-Cl (Tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride): Protects hydroxyl groups.
    - Fmoc-Cl (Fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl chloride): Used in peptide synthesis.

2.4 Derivatizing Reagents

Derivatization is often necessary to improve the detectability, stability, or volatility of analytes, especially in chromatographic techniques.

- *Examples:*
    - Dansyl Chloride: Labels amines for fluorescence detection.
    - Silylating Agents (e.g., BSTFA): Increase volatility for GC-MS analysis.
    - DNPH (2,4-Dinitrophenylhydrazine): Forms hydrazones with aldehydes and ketones.

2.5 Oxidizing and Reducing Reagents

These are involved in redox reactions, essential for converting functional groups into desired forms during synthesis.

- *Oxidizing Agents:*
    - Potassium permanganate ($KMnO_4$)
    - Chromium trioxide (CrO_3)
    - Hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2)
- *Reducing Agents:*
    - Sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$)
    - Lithium aluminium hydride ($LiAlH_4$)
    - Palladium on carbon (H_2/Pd)

2.6 Coupling and Condensation Reagents

These facilitate bond formation between molecules, particularly in peptide synthesis, esterification, and amidation reactions.

- *Examples:*
    - Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC)
    - 1-Ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide (EDC)
    - Carbonyldiimidazole (CDI)

2.7 Buffering and Solubilizing Reagents

Used to maintain pH or improve the solubility of drugs and excipients during chemical or analytical processes.

- *Buffers:*
    - Phosphate buffer
    - Acetate buffer
    - Citrate buffer
- *Solubilizers:*
    - Cyclodextrins
    - Tetrabutylammonium bromide (TBAB)
    - Polyethylene glycol (PEG) [4].

3. Key Reagents in Pharmaceutical Applications

Reagents are central to the design and synthesis of pharmaceutical compounds. Their proper selection ensures the desired chemical transformations occur with high efficiency, selectivity, and yield. This section highlights some of the most commonly used reagents in pharmaceutical synthesis and analysis, categorized by their primary function [5].

3.1 Acylating and Alkylating Agents

These reagents introduce acyl or alkyl groups into a molecule, which can alter the molecule's biological activity, solubility, or metabolic stability.

Acylating Agents:

- **Acetyl Chloride** – Acetylates alcohols and amines.
- **Benzoyl Chloride** – Used to introduce benzoyl groups, often in protecting strategies.

Alkylating Agents:

- **Methyl Iodide (CH_3I)** – Alkylation of nucleophilic centers such as amines or thiols.
- **Dimethyl Sulfate (DMS)** – Methylating reagent, though highly toxic.
- **Ethyl Bromide** – Commonly used in N- or O-alkylation reactions [6].

3.2 Oxidizing Agents

These reagents remove electrons from other molecules and are crucial for converting alcohols to aldehydes/ketones or acids, and for oxidative cleavage reactions.

- **Potassium Permanganate ($KMnO_4$)** – Strong oxidizer for alkenes and alcohols.
- **Chromic Acid (H_2CrO_4)** – Used in the Jones oxidation for primary/secondary alcohols.
- **Hydrogen Peroxide (H_2O_2)** – Mild oxidizing agent, also used in sterilization.

3.3 Reducing Agents

Used to donate electrons or hydrogen atoms, reducing a compound's oxidation state—essential for converting carbonyls to alcohols, nitro groups to amines, etc.

- **Lithium Aluminium Hydride ($LiAlH_4$)** – Strong reducing agent for esters, acids, and amides.
- **Sodium Borohydride ($NaBH_4$)** – Milder alternative, selectively reduces aldehydes and ketones.
- **Catalytic Hydrogenation (H_2 with Pd/C, Pt, or Ni)** – Reduces alkenes, alkynes, and nitro compounds [7].

3.4 Halogenating Agents

Introduce halogen atoms (Cl, Br, I) into organic molecules, which may influence biological activity or serve as intermediates for further reactions.

- **Thionyl Chloride ($SOCl_2$)** – Converts alcohols into alkyl chlorides.
- **Phosphorus Tribromide (PBr_3)** – Used to replace OH with Br in alcohols.
- **N-Bromosuccinimide (NBS)** – Selective bromination at allylic and benzylic positions.

3.5 Coupling and Condensing Agents

These reagents facilitate bond formation between functional groups, especially in **amide bond formation** in peptide chemistry and **esterification**.

- **Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC)** – Used in peptide synthesis.
- **EDC.HCl (Water-soluble carbodiimide)** – Often combined with NHS (N-hydroxysuccinimide).
- **Carbonyldiimidazole (CDI)** – Used for forming esters and amides from acids.

3.6 Buffering and Solubilizing Agents

These reagents are important for controlling reaction pH or improving solubility of poorly soluble drugs during synthesis or analytical procedures.

- **Phosphate Buffer** – Maintains physiological pH in aqueous systems.
- **Citrate and Acetate Buffers** – Used in drug stability and formulation studies.
- **Cyclodextrins** – Increase solubility and stability of hydrophobic drugs.
- **PEG (Polyethylene Glycol)** – Used as a solubilizing agent or solvent.

3.7 Dehydrating and Desiccating Agents

These are used to remove water during synthesis (e.g., in condensation reactions) or to dry solvents and reagents.

- **Phosphorus Pentoxide (P_2O_5)** – Powerful dehydrating agent.
- **Molecular Sieves** – Commonly used to dry solvents.
- **Calcium Chloride ($CaCl_2$)** – General desiccant.

These key reagents represent only a portion of those available to the pharmaceutical chemist. Their strategic use in synthesis and analysis can significantly impact the efficiency, yield, and safety of pharmaceutical processes [8].

4. Applications in Drug Synthesis and Analysis

Reagents serve essential roles in both the synthesis and analysis of pharmaceutical compounds. Their judicious application ensures the creation of complex drug molecules with high purity and the accurate evaluation of these compounds for quality, efficacy, and safety. This section highlights how reagents are applied in both drug synthesis and analytical procedures.

4.1 Applications in Drug Synthesis

Pharmaceutical drug synthesis often involves multiple steps, each requiring specific reagents to carry out transformations such as bond formation, functional group interconversion, and stereochemical control. The right choice of reagent can affect not only yield but also the selectivity and safety profile of the process**.**

a) Functional Group Interconversion

- Alcohol to Aldehyde/Ketone: Reagents like PCC (Pyridinium chlorochromate) or Swern oxidation reagents are used.
- Acid to Ester: Fischer esterification uses acids and alcohols in the presence of a strong acid like H_2SO_4.
- Amines to Amides: Acylating agents such as acetic anhydride or benzoyl chloride are commonly employed.

b) Carbon–Carbon Bond Formation

- Grignard Reagents (RMgX): Used in nucleophilic addition to carbonyls.
- Aldol and Claisen Reactions: Utilized for building complex carbon skeletons in drug molecules.

c) Cyclization Reactions

- Heterocyclic drugs often require reagents like polyphosphoric acid or $POCl_3$ to assist in ring formation.

d) Introduction of Stereochemistry

- Chiral reagents or catalysts, such as CBS catalyst or Sharpless epoxidation reagents, are employed for enantioselective synthesis, crucial for developing optically active drugs.

e) Peptide and Prodrug Synthesis

- Use of coupling agents (e.g., EDC, DCC) and protecting group strategies enables the stepwise construction of peptide drugs and prodrugs [9].

4.2 Applications in Pharmaceutical Analysis

Analytical chemistry ensures that pharmaceutical compounds meet predefined standards for identity, purity, strength, and quality. Reagents are used in a variety of analytical techniques, both qualitative and quantitative.

a) Titrimetric Analysis

- Acid–Base Titration: Reagents like NaOH and HCl determine the purity of weak acids or bases.
- Redox Titration: Potassium permanganate ($KMnO_4$), iodine, and sodium thiosulphate are widely used.
- Complexometric Titration: EDTA is used to analyze metal ions in pharmaceutical formulations.

b) Colorimetric and Spectrophotometric Methods

- Ninhydrin reacts with amino acids to produce colored complexes measurable by UV-visible spectroscopy.
- 1,10-Phenanthroline forms colored complexes with iron ions for their quantification.

c) Limit Test and Impurity Detection

- Silver nitrate for chloride, barium chloride for sulphate, and ammonium molybdate for phosphate detection.
- Reagents help identify trace metals, residual solvents, and other contaminants as per pharmacopeial guidelines.

d) Chromatographic Techniques

- Reagents aid in sample preparation (e.g., derivatizing agents like silylation agents for GC), mobile phase modification (e.g., buffers, ion-pairing reagents), and detection enhancement.

e) Stability Testing

- Oxidative, hydrolytic, photolytic, and thermal reagents are used in forced degradation studies to evaluate the stability and shelf life of drugs.

Reagents thus play a dual role in pharmaceutical chemistry: enabling the synthesis of structurally diverse drug candidates and ensuring these compounds meet stringent quality and regulatory criteria. Mastery of reagent functions allows pharmaceutical chemists to develop safer, more effective medicines with greater precision [10].

5. Safety Considerations and Handling of Reagents

Working with chemical reagents in pharmaceutical chemistry demands strict adherence to safety protocols. Many reagents, while essential for synthesis and analysis, can be toxic, corrosive, flammable, reactive, or environmentally hazardous. Safe handling and proper risk management are critical to ensure both researcher safety and product integrity.

5.1 General Safety Guidelines

- Personal Protective Equipment (PPE): Always wear lab coats, gloves, and safety goggles when handling reagents.

- Ventilation: Use fume hoods when working with volatile, flammable, or noxious chemicals to prevent inhalation.
- Labeling: Ensure all reagent containers are properly labeled with the chemical name, concentration, hazard symbols, and date of opening.
- Storage: Store reagents according to their hazard classification (e.g., acids, bases, oxidizers, flammables) and manufacturer recommendations. Avoid incompatible storage (e.g., acids near bases, oxidizers near organics).
- Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS): Always consult the MSDS before using any chemical to understand its hazards and first aid measures.

5.2 Specific Hazards of Common Reagents

Reagent	Hazard Type	Precaution
Thionyl chloride ($SOCl_2$)	Toxic, Corrosive, Reacts with water	Use in fume hood, store in sealed container
Hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2)	Oxidizer, Causes burns	Store away from organics and heat sources
Lithium aluminium hydride ($LiAlH_4$)	Highly reactive with water, Flammable	Store under inert atmosphere (e.g., nitrogen), handle dry
Chromic acid	Carcinogenic, Corrosive	Avoid skin contact, proper waste disposal
Dimethyl sulfate (DMS)	Alkylating agent, Highly toxic	Extreme caution, avoid inhalation and contact

5.3 Spill and Emergency Handling

- Minor spills: Use appropriate neutralizers (e.g., sodium bicarbonate for acids), absorb with inert materials (e.g., vermiculite), and dispose in labeled waste containers.
- Major spills or exposure: Evacuate area, notify safety personnel, and follow institutional emergency procedures.
- First Aid:
    - Skin contact: Rinse with copious water and remove contaminated clothing.
    - Eye contact: Irrigate with water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.
    - Inhalation: Move to fresh air; if breathing is difficult, seek immediate medical help.

5.4 Waste Disposal

- Segregate chemical wastes according to their type (e.g., halogenated vs. non-halogenated solvents, heavy metals, reactive wastes).

- Do not dispose of reagents in regular trash or pour them into drains unless specifically approved.
- Use clearly labeled waste containers and ensure disposal follows local environmental and institutional guidelines.
- Document and track waste generation as per regulatory standards (e.g., CPCB norms in India or EPA in the USA).

5.5 Regulatory and Environmental Compliance

- Ensure compliance with Good Laboratory Practices (GLP) and Good Manufacturing Practices (GMP).
- Conduct risk assessments before introducing new reagents into any laboratory or industrial process.
- Follow guidelines laid down by agencies such as:
    - OSHA (Occupational Safety and Health Administration)
    - EPA (Environmental Protection Agency)
    - CPCB (Central Pollution Control Board – India)
    - ICH Q3C/Q3D (limits for residual solvents and elemental impurities)

5.6 Training and Documentation

- All personnel must undergo regular safety training related to chemical handling.
- Maintain updated Chemical Inventory Lists, SOPs (Standard Operating Procedures), and accident records.
- Encourage a safety-first culture to minimize risk and ensure accountability.

In conclusion, while reagents are indispensable in pharmaceutical research and manufacturing, they must be handled with a deep understanding of their risks and proper safety measures. Instituting robust safety protocols not only protects personnel but also maintains the integrity of the pharmaceutical products and the environment [11].

6. Regulatory and Quality Control Aspects of Reagents

In pharmaceutical chemistry, reagents are not only tools for synthesis and analysis—they are also critical components governed by strict regulatory standards. Proper documentation, validation, and control of reagents ensure compliance with international guidelines and guarantee the safety, efficacy, and quality of pharmaceutical products.

6.1 Regulatory Requirements

Regulatory authorities demand rigorous control over all materials, including reagents, used during drug development and manufacturing. Reagents must be:

- Characterized for purity, identity, and stability.
- Sourced from approved vendors with appropriate quality certifications.

- Documented in compliance with Good Laboratory Practice (GLP) and Good Manufacturing Practice (GMP).

Key Regulatory Bodies and Guidelines:

- USFDA (United States Food and Drug Administration)
- EMA (European Medicines Agency)
- ICH Guidelines (International Council for Harmonisation)
    - ICH Q7: GMP for Active Pharmaceutical Ingredients
    - ICH Q3A/B/C/D: Impurities (organic, residual solvents, elemental)
- WHO Guidelines
- Indian Pharmacopeia Commission (IPC) / CDSCO (India)

6.2 Reagent Qualification and Validation

Before reagents are used in regulated pharmaceutical environments, they must undergo:

a) Qualification:

Ensures that the reagent meets the specified quality parameters.

- Identity Testing: Confirm the chemical nature via spectroscopy or chromatography.
- Purity Assessment: Ensure reagent grade meets pharmacopeial or in-house standards.
- Water Content, Residual Solvents, Heavy Metals: Must be within permissible limits.

b) Validation of Analytical Reagents:

- Used in validated analytical methods such as titration, HPLC, UV-Vis, etc.
- Reagent consistency must be ensured batch-to-batch to maintain method reproducibility.
- Stability and expiration dating must be monitored.

6.3 Grades of Reagents in Regulatory Use

Reagents used in pharmaceutical settings must comply with certain grade specifications to ensure purity and suitability for use.

Grade	Use	Standards
AR (Analytical Reagent)	High-purity, suitable for analytical work	Conforms to pharmacopeial standards
LR (Laboratory Reagent)	General lab use, not for regulated analysis	Lower purity than AR
HPLC Grade	For chromatographic applications	High purity, low UV absorbance
USP/NF Grade	Meets standards of USP/NF monographs	Suitable for pharmaceutical manufacturing
Ph. Eur./BP/IP Grade	Required for European/British/Indian pharmacopeia compliance	High-purity for GMP applications

6.4 Documentation and Traceability

Proper documentation ensures full traceability and accountability for reagent usage, especially in GMP environments.

- Certificates of Analysis (CoA) must accompany all reagent batches.
- Logbooks should record:
    - Date of receipt and opening
    - Storage conditions
    - Expiry or retest date
    - Usage details (analyst name, purpose)
- SOPs (Standard Operating Procedures) should be followed for reagent preparation, standardization, and use.

6.5 Reagent Storage and Retesting

To preserve their efficacy, reagents must be stored under controlled conditions, and some require periodic retesting:

- Store in designated reagent cabinets: flammables, acids, bases, light-sensitive compounds.
- Retest dates should be assigned to non-expiring reagents and updated after periodic testing.
- Ensure first-in, first-out (FIFO) inventory usage.

6.6 Audits and Compliance

- Reagents and their records are routinely audited by **regulatory agencies** during inspections.
- Deviations in reagent quality, usage, or documentation can lead to warnings or non-compliance reports.
- Regular internal audits and training ensure continuous compliance [12].

7. Recent Advances and Green Reagents in Pharmaceutical Chemistry

The evolving landscape of pharmaceutical chemistry is increasingly shaped by the need for sustainable, efficient, and environmentally friendly practices. Traditional reagents, while effective, often pose concerns related to toxicity, waste generation, and regulatory burden. As a result, researchers and industries are now adopting green chemistry principles and exploring innovative reagents that minimize health and environmental impacts without compromising efficacy [13].

7.1 Principles of Green Chemistry in Reagent Use

Green chemistry promotes the design of chemical products and processes that reduce or eliminate hazardous substances. Key principles relevant to reagents include:

- Use of safer solvents and reaction conditions

- Preference for renewable feedstocks
- Reduction in toxic by-products and waste
- Enhanced atom economy
- Use of catalytic reagents instead of stoichiometric ones
- Adoption of biodegradable or recyclable reagents

7.2 Green Reagents in Organic Synthesis

Recent years have witnessed the development of greener alternatives to traditionally hazardous reagents.

a) Green Oxidizing Agents

- Hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2): Eco-friendly oxidant that produces water as a by-product.
- Oxone (potassium peroxymonosulfate): Safer alternative to chromium-based oxidizers.
- TEMPO (2,2,6,6-Tetramethylpiperidine-1-oxyl): Catalytic oxidant used in combination with bleach (NaOCl).

b) Green Reducing Agents

- Ascorbic acid (Vitamin C): Used in reduction of metal ions and as an antioxidant.
- Sodium dithionite: A relatively safe reductant for nitro to amine transformations.
- Biocatalysts (enzymes): Enzyme-mediated reductions are gaining importance for stereoselective transformations.

c) Solvent-Free and Aqueous Reactions

- Reagents are now optimized for microwave-assisted, ultrasound-assisted, or mechanochemical (grinding) reactions that reduce or eliminate solvent use.
- Water and supercritical CO_2 are being explored as green solvents in various reactions.

d) Ionic Liquids and Deep Eutectic Solvents (DES)

- Function as recyclable reaction media with minimal volatility.
- Examples: Choline chloride-based DES, imidazolium-based ionic liquids [14].

7.3 Biocatalytic and Enzymatic Reagents

Biocatalysis uses enzymes or whole cells as catalysts, offering excellent selectivity, mild conditions, and environmental safety:

- Lipases, oxidases, dehydrogenases are commonly used in esterification, oxidation, and reduction.
- Enzyme reagents are used for the enantioselective synthesis of active pharmaceutical ingredients (APIs).
- Biocatalysis supports green and scalable industrial applications.

7.4 Catalysis as a Green Strategy

Catalytic reagents are preferred over stoichiometric ones due to reduced waste and cost:

- Transition metal catalysts (e.g., Pd, Ni, Cu) enable coupling reactions with minimal excess.
- Organocatalysts (e.g., proline, imidazoles) provide non-metal alternatives.
- Photocatalysts and electrocatalysts allow reactions under light or electric current without harsh chemicals.

7.5 Industry Examples of Green Reagent Adoption

Company	Green Innovation
Pfizer	Implemented biocatalytic steps in the synthesis of pregabalin
Merck	Used green oxidants and flow chemistry for antiretroviral APIs
AstraZeneca	Developed solvent-free synthesis for cardiovascular drugs

7.6 Challenges and Future Directions

While green reagents offer many advantages, their widespread adoption faces challenges:

- Cost and availability of green alternatives.
- Scalability and reproducibility in industrial setups.
- Need for regulatory approval and validation of new reagents.

Future research will likely focus on:

- Discovery of renewable reagent sources
- Development of AI-driven predictive models for reagent selection
- Expansion of integrated green process platforms [15].

8. Summary and Conclusion

Reagents form the backbone of pharmaceutical chemistry, playing a vital role in both the synthesis and analysis of drug molecules. From simple titrants used in analytical procedures to highly specific and selective catalysts used in complex organic synthesis, the choice and application of reagents significantly influence the efficacy, safety, and quality of pharmaceutical products.

This chapter provided a comprehensive overview of the various aspects of reagents in pharmaceutical chemistry:

- The introduction explained their definition, importance, and classification based on function, nature, and application.
- Common reagents were explored, highlighting their roles in routine chemical transformations, analytical determinations, and quality testing.
- Their applications in drug synthesis and analytical chemistry demonstrated their versatility in real-world pharmaceutical processes.

- A dedicated section addressed safety considerations, emphasizing the need for proper storage, handling, and waste disposal.
- The regulatory and quality control aspects stressed the importance of documentation, qualification, validation, and compliance with pharmacopeial and international standards.
- Finally, the chapter concluded with recent advances, including the use of green reagents, biocatalysts, and sustainable practices, reflecting the pharmaceutical industry's shift toward environmentally responsible chemistry.

Conclusion:

In the modern pharmaceutical landscape, reagents are no longer viewed merely as functional tools but as critical enablers of innovation, safety, and sustainability. A deep understanding of their chemical nature, safe handling, regulatory compliance, and environmental impact is essential for pharmaceutical scientists, analysts, and formulators alike. As pharmaceutical chemistry continues to evolve with advancements in green technologies, catalysis, and automation, the development and selection of efficient, safe, and eco-friendly reagents will remain a cornerstone in the journey toward creating better, safer, and more accessible medicines for the global population.

References:

1. Gladysz JA. Introduction: Recoverable catalysts and reagents perspective and prospective. Chem Rev. 2002;102(10):3215-6.
2. Pyrzynska K, Pękal A. Flavonoids as analytical reagents. Crit Rev Anal Chem. 2011;41(4):335-45.
3. Olah GA. Some new synthetic reagents and reactions. Acc Chem Res. 1980;13(9):330-6.
4. Satoh H, Funatsu K, Takano K, Nakata T. Classification and Prediction of Reagents' Roles by FRAU System with Self-Organizing Neural Network Model. Bull Chem Soc Jpn. 2000;73(9):1955-65.
5. Devi BK, Madhavi K, Naraparaju S, Deverakonda R. Use of chemical reagents in non-fluorescent pharmaceutical labels: a comprehensive review. Curr Pharm Anal. 2023;19(6):445-75.
6. Sivaraj C, Gandhi T. Alternative and uncommon acylating agents–an alive and kicking methodology. Chem - Asian J. 2021;16(19):2773-94.
7. Onishi T, Iwata H, Takagi Y. Effects of reducing and oxidizing agents on the action of bleomycin. J Biochem. 1975;77(4):745-52.
8. Magano J, Dunetz JR. Large-scale applications of transition metal-catalyzed couplings for the synthesis of pharmaceuticals. Chem Rev. 2011;111(3):2177-250.
9. Danielson ND, Gallagher PA, Bao JJ. Chemical reagents and derivatization procedures in drug analysis. Enc Ana Chem. 2000:7042-76.

10. Grudpan K, Hartwell SK, Lapanantnoppakhun S, McKelvie I. The case for the use of unrefined natural reagents in analytical chemistry—a green chemical perspective. Anal Methods. 2010;2(11):1651-61.
11. Viviani L, Vandeputte J, Smith D, Coppens E, Mahmood K, Goel S, *et al.* Global availability of critical reagents for biologicals testing-Current status, challenges and possible solutions. Biologicals. 2025;90:101821.
12. Ringuette AL. Regulatory aspects of reagents. Food, Drug, Cosmet Law J. 1972;27(9):557-70.
13. Kar S, Sanderson H, Roy K, Benfenati E, Leszczynski J. Green chemistry in the synthesis of pharmaceuticals. Chem Rev. 2021;122(3):3637-710.
14. Sheldon R. Introduction to green chemistry, organic synthesis and pharmaceuticals. Green Chem Pharm Ind. 2010:1-20.
15. Zhang W. Green chemistry aspects of fluorous techniques—opportunities and challenges for small-scale organic synthesis. Green Chem. 2009;11(7):911-20.

Bhumi Publishing, India
July 2025

ADVANCEMENTS IN PROBIOTICS

Tamanna Chhabra*, Lavi Shah
Department of Prosthodontics and Crown and Bridge
K M Shah Dental College and Hospital,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara-391760, Gujarat
*Corresponding auhor E-mail: drtamannachhabra@gmail.com

Abstract:
The human microbiome, a diverse community of microorganisms throughout the body, plays a crucial role in maintaining health. Probiotics—live microorganisms that provide health benefits when taken in the right amounts—have gained attention for their ability to positively influence this microbiome. Advances in microbiology, genomics, and formulation technologies have shifted probiotics from traditional fermented foods to scientifically supported therapeutic agents. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of probiotic science, beginning with their classification by microbial type, source, and delivery format. It explores their use in managing gastrointestinal disorders, respiratory and urogenital infections, allergies, metabolic conditions, and oral health. Key mechanisms of action are covered, including immune modulation, inhibition of harmful microbes, and support for the intestinal barrier. The chapter also addresses safety concerns, optimal dosing, and innovative formats such as functional beverages and lozenges. Emerging concepts like prebiotics, synbiotics, and postbiotics are introduced, alongside commercial trends and regulatory perspectives in the growing global probiotic market.

Keywords: Probiotics, Immune Modulation, Oral Microbiome, Prebiotics, Postbiotics, Microbial Balance

Introduction:

The human body is host to a vast and dynamic microbial ecosystem—collectively known as the human microbiome—which exists symbiotically with the host on various surfaces, including the skin, gastrointestinal tract, oral cavity, and other mucosal membranes. This community is comprised of bacteria, archaea, viruses, fungi, and protozoa, with bacterial populations playing a dominant role. These microorganisms are not merely passive residents; rather, they contribute significantly to physiological processes such as digestion, vitamin synthesis, immune modulation, and defense against pathogenic organisms.

Among the various strategies aimed at manipulating the microbiome to benefit human health, probiotics have emerged as a prominent and well-researched approach. According to the FAO/WHO, probiotics are defined as "live microorganisms which, when administered in adequate amounts, confer a health benefit on the host." [1] This definition underscores the

functional nature of probiotics, which act by modulating the host microbiome, enhancing barrier function, and stimulating or regulating immune responses.

The growth in probiotic research has been exponential, driven by technological advancements in genomics, next-generation sequencing, and microbial culturing techniques. These tools have enabled scientists to better understand strain-specific effects, mechanisms of action, and interactions between probiotics and host systems. Parallel to scientific interest, public awareness around gut health, immunity, and holistic wellness has propelled probiotics into mainstream healthcare and consumer markets.[2]

Today, probiotics are not only a staple in fermented foods but also appear in dietary supplements, pharmaceuticals, oral-care products, infant formulas, and even dermatological preparations. Their applications extend beyond gut health into areas such as oral health, metabolic syndrome, allergic conditions, urogenital infections, and mental well-being. This chapter provides an in-depth analysis of probiotics: their classification, clinical applications, benefits, limitations, and evolving role in both preventive and therapeutic settings.

Categorization of Probiotics

Probiotics can be grouped based on the type of microorganisms they contain. The most common are bacterial probiotics, especially from well-known genera like *Lactobacillus*, *Bifidobacterium*, and *Streptococcus*. These bacteria are naturally found in the human gut and in many fermented foods, and they play a key role in supporting digestive health. Another important group is yeast-based probiotics, with *Saccharomyces boulardii* being the most widely studied. Unlike bacterial strains, this probiotic yeast is especially effective in helping prevent and treat certain gut issues, such as diarrhea caused by antibiotics. Both types offer unique benefits and are used in different ways to support overall digestive wellness.

Origin

Probiotic strains come from different places, and each type has its own strengths. Some are found in the environment, like soil or water. These can be really unique and useful, but they're less familiar to our bodies and often face more hurdles before they can be used safely in products. Others come from fermented dairy foods like yogurt and kefir—these have been part of our diets for centuries and are generally considered safe and reliable. Then there are strains taken from healthy people. These human-derived probiotics are often a great match for our bodies, especially our gut, because they tend to stick well to the intestinal lining and work in harmony with our natural systems.

Formulation Type

Probiotics need the right delivery systems to stay alive and actually do their job in the body. One of the most natural ways to get them is through fermented foods like yogurt, kefir, kimchi, sauerkraut, and kombucha, which not only contain live cultures but also taste great and come

with added nutrients. For more targeted support, probiotics are available as supplements—capsules, powders, or tablets—designed to deliver specific strains based on individual health needs. Functional drinks, like probiotic-fortified juices or plant-based beverages, are another convenient option that fits easily into daily life. Probiotics are even making their way into non-food products like lozenges, toothpaste, mouthwashes, and skin creams, offering new ways to support health beyond the gut. Each of these options varies in how well it keeps the probiotics alive over time and how effectively they work once used. Keeping these beneficial microbes stable during storage and processing is still one of the biggest hurdles scientists and manufacturers face.[2]

Indications for Probiotic Use

Gastrointestinal Conditions

Probiotics have long been associated with gut health. Their role in various gastrointestinal disorders is now well-established.

- **Antibiotic-Associated Diarrhea (AAD):**
  Administration of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG* and *S. boulardii* has been shown to reduce the incidence, duration, and severity of AAD.[3]
- **Irritable Bowel Syndrome (IBS):**
  Multiple strains have demonstrated the ability to alleviate abdominal discomfort, bloating, and irregular bowel habits.[4]
- **Constipation:**
  Bifidobacterium lactis has shown improvement in stool frequency and consistency in both adults and children .[4]
- **Inflammatory Bowel Disease (IBD):**
  While not curative, certain strains like *E. coli* help maintain remission in ulcerative colitis and manage pouchitis .[4]
- **Necrotizing Enterocolitis (NEC):**
  A devastating condition in premature infants, NEC risk can be significantly reduced with specific probiotic strains.[4]

Non-Gastrointestinal Infections

Emerging evidence supports the role of probiotics in reducing the incidence of infections beyond the gut.

- **Upper Respiratory Tract Infections (URTIs):** Probiotics modulate immune responses in the respiratory tract. Trials have shown reduced days with illness and antibiotic use in school-aged children and the elderly.[5]

- **Urogenital Infections:** Vaginal microbiota rich in *lactobacilli* protect against infections. Oral and vaginal administration of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus GR-1* and *L. reuteri RC-14* have been successful in reducing bacterial vaginosis recurrence. [5]
- **Candidiasis:** Competition for adhesion sites and pH modulation help suppress fungal overgrowth. Probiotics are especially beneficial during antibiotic or corticosteroid therapy.[5]
- **Allergic Conditions:** The hygiene hypothesis suggests that modern sanitation has altered immune development. Probiotics may promote tolerance by supporting T-regulatory cell development and modifying gut flora composition. [6]
- **Metabolic Disorders:** Probiotics may reduce insulin resistance, enhance glucose uptake, and influence lipid profiles. Studies show a role in weight loss, particularly with Lactobacillus gasseri. [7]
- **Blood Pressure Control:** Meta-analyses suggest a modest but statistically significant antihypertensive effect in select individuals .[7]
- **Dental Health:** *Streptococcus salivarius K12* produces bacteriocin-like substances that inhibit cariogenic bacteria. Clinical benefits include improved gingival indices and plaque reduction. [8]

Safety and Contraindications

For most healthy individuals, probiotics are generally safe and well-tolerated. However, certain groups require extra caution. High-risk patients—such as those with central lines, severe acute pancreatitis, weakened immune systems, or critical illness—may face serious complications like sepsis or fungemia, particularly from yeast-based probiotics. While most side effects are mild, like bloating or gas, rare but serious events demand clinical oversight. Critically ill patients, as shown in some studies, may even experience increased risks. In low-birth-weight neonates, benefits exist but depend heavily on strain and dosage. Additionally, probiotics may interact with medications like antifungals or immunosuppressants. Safety assessments should consider strain-specific data, clinical history, and method of delivery.[9]

Adverse Effects: Gas, bloating, and cramps are most common and self-limiting. Rare cases of endocarditis and liver abscesses have been reported, particularly in those with underlying disease.

Benefits and Drawbacks

Benefits

- Microbial Balance: Crucial in restoring gut flora following antibiotic treatment or infections. [10]
- Immune modulation: Enhances immune defense, supports mucosal immunity, and promotes tolerance. [11]

- Pathogen Inhibition: Produces bacteriocins and competes for adhesion sites, limiting pathogen colonization. [12]
- Oral Health: Supports a healthy oral microbiome, reducing plaque formation and gingival inflammation. [8]
- Nutrient Synthesis: Probiotics can synthesize vitamins like B12, K2, and folate. [13]
- Metabolite Production: SCFAs (e.g., butyrate) improve gut integrity and systemic inflammation.
- The other systemic health benefits are represented in Fig. 1.

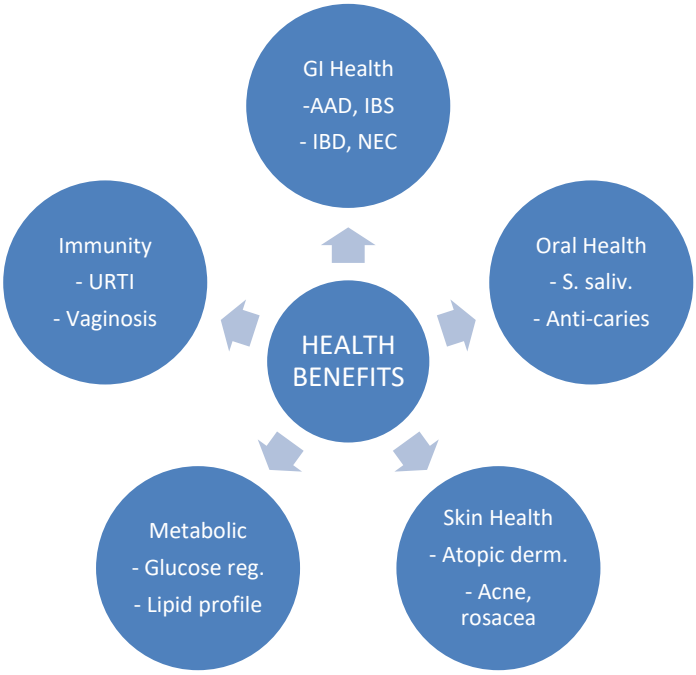

Figure 1: Therapeutic effects

Drawbacks

- Strain-Specific Action: Benefits cannot be generalized across species or strains. [14]
- Product Quality: Issues with viability, incorrect labeling, and shelf-life are common in low-cost products. [14]
- Insufficient Evidence: Many claimed benefits—especially in skin and mental health—require more robust trials [14]
- Viability Issues: Heat, moisture, and gastric acid can reduce viability.

Dosage and Formulation: Effective probiotic therapy relies on several key factors. Dosage typically ranges from 10^6 to 10^{11} CFU per day, depending on the specific strain and health condition being treated. Duration of use also varies—short-term use (5–14 days) is common for acute issues like antibiotic-associated diarrhea (AAD), while chronic conditions such as irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) or inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) may require prolonged supplementation. The formulation and delivery route play a vital role, with options including oral

forms (capsules, yogurts), topical applications (creams, oral rinses, lozenges), and mucosal routes (such as suppositories). For any probiotic to be effective, it must remain stable and survive the harsh environment of the gastrointestinal tract. Ensuring that the probiotic reaches its target site in a viable state is essential for achieving therapeutic benefits.[15]

Probiotics in Oral Health

The oral cavity hosts a unique and diverse microbiome, and an imbalance here can lead to issues like cavities, gum disease, and bad breath. Probiotic strains such as *Lactobacillus reuteri*, *Lactobacillus salivarius*, and *Streptococcus salivarius* help by inhibiting harmful bacteria like *Streptococcus mutans*, reducing gum inflammation and bleeding, minimizing plaque buildup, and neutralizing the sulfur compounds that cause bad breath. Products like probiotic chewing gums, lozenges, and toothpastes are emerging as promising tools to support oral health alongside traditional dental care.[8,16]

Mechanism: Probiotics influence the immune system through multiple complex mechanisms. They strengthen the body's barriers by enhancing the integrity of tight junctions in mucosal linings, helping to prevent harmful substances from entering. Probiotics also modulate immune cells like dendritic cells, T-regulatory cells, and natural killer cells to maintain immune balance. They regulate cytokines by decreasing pro-inflammatory molecules such as TNF-α and IL-6 while boosting anti-inflammatory cytokines like IL-10. Additionally, probiotics stimulate the production of secretory IgA, which supports mucosal defenses. By promoting a healthy Th1/Th2 balance, they play a key role in managing allergies and autoimmune conditions.[11,17] Mechanisms of immune enhancement in Fig. 2.

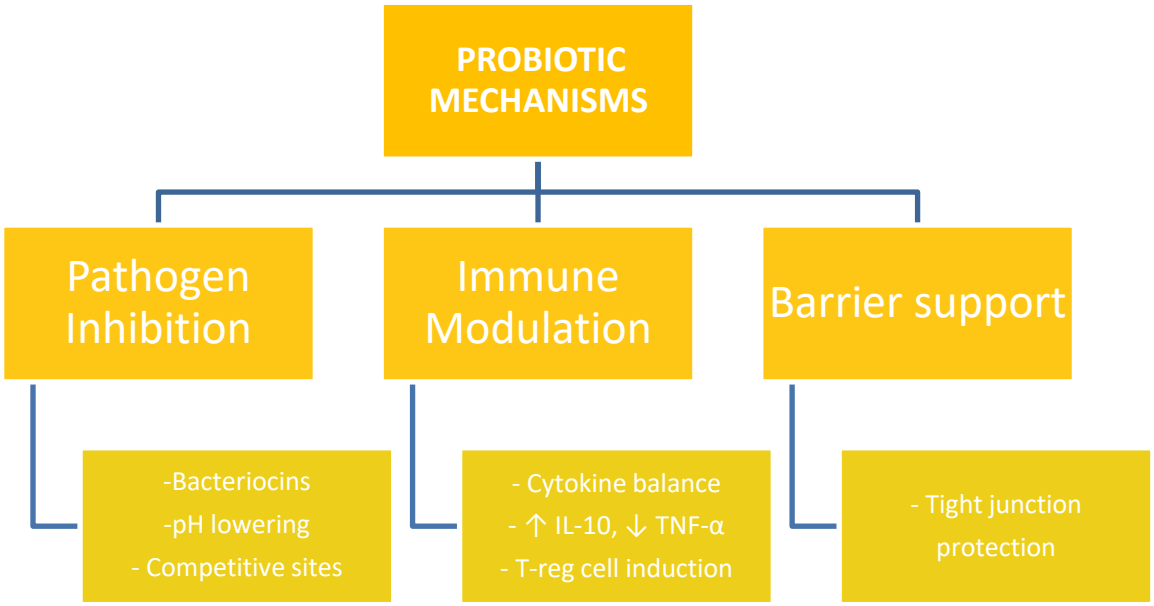

Figure 2: Mechanisms of Immune Enhancement

Prebiotics, Synbiotics, and Postbiotics

The concept of modulating the gut microbiota for health benefits extends beyond probiotics alone. Recent advancements have introduced related compounds—prebiotics, synbiotics, and postbiotics—which play vital roles in supporting, enhancing, or mimicking the beneficial effects of probiotics. Understanding the distinctions and synergistic effects of these components is crucial in developing targeted therapies for various health conditions.

Prebiotics

Prebiotics are non-digestible food ingredients, typically dietary fibers, that selectively stimulate the growth and activity of beneficial bacteria in the gut.[18] Unlike probiotics, which are live organisms, prebiotics serve as a food source for these beneficial microbes, especially *Bifidobacteria* and *Lactobacilli.* Common examples include: Inulin – found in chicory root, onions, and garlic, Fructo-oligosaccharides (FOS) – derived from fruits and vegetables, Galacto-oligosaccharides (GOS) – found in dairy products.

Mechanism of Action of Prebiotics reach the colon undigested and are fermented by the gut microbiota, producing short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs) like acetate, propionate, and butyrate. These SCFAs serve as an energy source for colonocytes, reduce gut inflammation, and maintain intestinal barrier integrity. Health benefits of probiotics include better calcium absorption, improved bowel regularity, and regulation of blood sugar and cholesterol levels. They also help strengthen the immune system by supporting a healthy gut microbiota.

Synbiotics

Synbiotics are formulations that combine both probiotics and prebiotics in a single product, aiming to enhance the survival, implantation, and activity of beneficial microbes in the gut.[19] The prebiotic component supports the probiotic strain, increasing its effectiveness and longevity in the host. Example of symbiotic is *Bifidobacterium lactis* with FOS – where FOS selectively nourishes *B. lactis*, improving its colonization and health impact

Types of Synbiotics:

a) Complementary synbiotics: Probiotic and prebiotic act independently but together support gut health.

b) Synergistic synbiotics: Prebiotic specifically enhances the function or growth of the co-administered probiotic strain.

Health benefits of probiotics include improved digestion and nutrient absorption, restoring microbial balance after antibiotics, boosting immune defenses while reducing inflammation, and helping manage conditions such as irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) and metabolic syndrome.

Postbiotics

Postbiotics refer to the non-viable bacterial products or metabolic by-products secreted by probiotic bacteria during fermentation.[20] These include compounds such as short-chain fatty

acids (SCFAs), enzymes, peptides, cell wall fragments, polysaccharides, and organic acids. Unlike probiotics, postbiotics do not contain live microorganisms, making them more stable and safer, especially in vulnerable populations like infants, elderly, and immunocompromised individuals. Examples: SCFAs (butyrate, acetate) – energy sources for gut cells, anti-inflammatory agents-Exopolysaccharides (EPS) – bioactive molecules with immune-modulating effects, Bacterial lysates – used in respiratory infection prevention and immune enhancement.

Health benefits include anti-inflammatory and antioxidant effects, strengthening of the intestinal barrier, regulation of immune responses, and potential therapeutic roles in metabolic disorders, allergies, and infections.

Commercial Availability

The global market was valued at ~$79 million in 2025, projected to reach $133 billion by 2029.[21,22] Products include dairy and non-dairy foods, supplements, infant formulas, oral care, and cosmetics.[21,22] Key brands include Danone(Activia), Yakult, Nestlé(Garden of Life), Amul, and Mother Dairy.[23] Consumer demand is driven by a combination of wellness trends, personalized nutrition, and increased clinical validation.

Clinical Considerations and Future Perspectives

Clinicians should select probiotic strains based on proven benefits, ensuring products maintain viability and stability through the gastrointestinal tract. Dosage and formulation must be tailored to specific conditions and supported by evidence. Trustworthy manufacturers typically have third-party testing and GMP certification. Looking ahead, advances include next-generation probiotics developed with synthetic biology, personalized probiotics guided by individual microbiome sequencing, and stronger regulatory oversight to guarantee quality and safety. Research is expanding into areas like the gut-brain axis and cognitive health. However, more robust clinical trials and long-term safety data are needed, with regulatory standards differing across countries.[24,25]

Conclusion:

Probiotics have evolved from humble origins in fermented foods to highly targeted clinical and commercial applications. By influencing the human microbiome, they serve as tools for restoring balance, enhancing immunity, and preventing disease. As the scientific understanding of microbial ecology deepens, so too will the potential applications of probiotics. The integration of prebiotics, synbiotics, and postbiotics has further broadened the therapeutic landscape, promising a future where microbiome modulation plays a central role in personalized healthcare. However, clinical use should remain grounded in robust evidence, considering the strain-specificity, dosage, and safety profile of each formulation. As this dynamic field continues to grow, so does the opportunity to improve global health through the power of beneficial microbes.[26]

References:

1. FAO/WHO. Guidelines for the Evaluation of Probiotics in Food. Report of a Joint FAO/WHO Working Group on Drafting Guidelines for the Evaluation of Probiotics in Food, London, Ontario, Canada, 2002.
2. Hill C, Guarner F, Reid G, Gibson GR, Merenstein DJ, Pot B, *et al.* The International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics consensus statement on the scope and appropriate use of the term probiotic. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2014;11(8):506-14.
3. Goldenberg JZ, Yap C, Lytvyn L, Lo CK, Beardsley J, Mertz D, *et al.* Probiotics for the prevention of Clostridium difficile-associated diarrhea in adults and children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2017;2017(12):CD006095.
4. Sanders ME, Merenstein DJ, Reid G, Gibson GR, Rastall RA. Probiotics and prebiotics in intestinal health and disease: from biology to the clinic. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2019;16(10):605-16.
5. Plaza-Díaz J, Ruiz-Ojeda FJ, Gil-Campos M, Gil A. Mechanisms of Action of Probiotics. Adv Nutr. 2019;10(suppl_1):S49–S66.
6. Markowiak P, Śliżewska K. Effects of Probiotics, Prebiotics, and Synbiotics on Human Health. Nutrients. 2017;9(9):1021.
7. Gibson GR, Hutkins R, Sanders ME, Prescott SL, Reimer RA, Salminen SJ, *et al.* Expert consensus document: The International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics (ISAPP) consensus statement on the definition and scope of synbiotics. Nutr Res Rev. 2017;30(1):1-16.
8. Gruner D, Paris S, Schwendicke F. Probiotics for managing caries and periodontitis: Systematic review and meta-analysis. J Dent. 2016;48:16-25.
9. Collado MC, Gueimonde M, Salminen S. Probiotic and prebiotic functional foods: safety and the need for scientific evidence. Eur J Clin Nutr. 2009;63(3):331-3.
10. Reid G, Younes JA, Van der Mei HC, Gloor GB, Knight R, Busscher HJ. Microbiota restoration: natural and supplemented recovery of human microbial communities. Nat Rev Microbiol. 2011;9(1):27-38.
11. Hemarajata P, Versalovic J. Effects of probiotics on gut microbiota: mechanisms of intestinal immunomodulation and neuromodulation. Therap Adv Gastroenterol. 2013;6(1):39-51.
12. Timmerman HM, Koning CJM, Mulder L, Rombouts FM, Beynen AC. Monostrain, multistrain and multispecies probiotics–a comparison of functionality and efficacy. Int J Food Microbiol. 2004;96(3):219-33.
13. de Vrese M, Schrezenmeir J. Probiotics, prebiotics, and synbiotics. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol. 2008;111:1-66.

14. Suez J, Zmora N, Segal E, Elinav E. The pros, cons, and many unknowns of probiotics. Nat Med. 2019;25(5):716-29.
15. US Probiotic Guide. Clinical Guide to Probiotic Products Available in the USA. 2024 Edition.
16. Saha S, Tomaro-Duchesneau C, Malhotra M, Kahouli I, Prakash S. Probiotics as oral health biotherapeutics. Expert Opin Biol Ther. 2012;12(9):1207-20.
17. Plaza-Díaz J, Ruiz-Ojeda FJ, Gil-Campos M, Gil A. Mechanisms of Action of Probiotics. Adv Nutr. 2019;10(suppl_1):S49–S66.
18. Gibson GR, Hutkins R, Sanders ME, Prescott SL, Reimer RA, Salminen SJ, *et al.* Expert consensus document: The International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics (ISAPP) consensus statement on the definition and scope of synbiotics. Nutr Res Rev. 2017;30(1):1-16.
19. Wegh CA, Geerlings SY, Knol J, Roeselers G, Belzer C. Postbiotics and their potential applications in early life nutrition and beyond. Int J Mol Sci. 2019;20(19):4673.
20. Salminen S, Collado MC, Endo A, Hill C, Lebeer S, Quigley EMM, *et al.* The International Scientific Association of Probiotics and Prebiotics (ISAPP) consensus statement on the definition and scope of postbiotics. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2021;18(9):649-67.
21. Data Bridge Market Research. Global Probiotic Market – Industry Trends and Forecast to 2029. Data Bridge Market Research [Internet]. 2024 [cited 2025 July 5]. Available from: https://www.databridgemarketresearch.com
22. Statista. Global probiotic market size 2020–2029. Statista Research Department [Internet]. 2025 [cited 2025 July 5]. Available from: https://www.statista.com
23. The Economic Times. India's probiotics market doubles in five years. The Economic Times [Internet]. 2025 [cited 2025 July 5]. Available from: https://economictimes.indiatimes.com
24. NIH Office of Dietary Supplements. Probiotics – Health Professional Fact Sheet [Internet]. National Institutes of Health; 2024 [cited 2025 July 5]. Available from: https://ods.od.nih.gov
25. Sharma P, Tomar SK, Sangwan V, Goswami P, Singh R. Antibiotic resistance among commercially available probiotics. Food Res Int. 2014;57:176-95.
26. Ouwehand AC, Salminen S, Isolauri E. Probiotics: an overview of beneficial effects. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek. 2002;82(1–4):279-89.

Bhumi Publishing, India
July 2025

EXPLORING THE PHARMACOLOGICAL POTENTIAL OF *PUNICA GRANATUM LINN.*

Rahul Trivedi*, Kinjal P Patel, Sarika S Parekh, Sunil B. Baile
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Vadodara, Gujarat. Pin: 391760
*Corresponding author E-mail: trivrahul@gmail.com

Abstract:
Medicinal plants have been recognized for their medicinal value for thousands of years, and traditional remedies continue to play a significant role in treating various illnesses across the globe. In recent times, interest in alternative medicine and the therapeutic application of natural products, particularly those sourced from plants, has been steadily increasing. *Punica granatum* L. (pomegranate) is a traditional medicinal plant native to the Mediterranean region, long used for treating a variety of ailments. Growing research has demonstrated that pomegranate exhibits numerous pharmacological properties, including antidiabetic, antianxiety, and anti-inflammatory effects. Regular consumption of pomegranate may also support gut microbiota health, thereby helping to prevent conditions like obesity and diabetes. Research conducted on *Punica granatum* supports the traditional use of the plant by scientifically validating its therapeutic effectiveness against a wide range of diseases. This review seeks to provide a comprehensive summary of the pharmacological characteristics, underlying mechanisms, and preclinical investigations of *Punica granatum*.

Keywords: *Punica granatum*., Antidiabetic, Anti-Inflammatory, Anti-Arthritic, Antianxiety. Wound Healing.

Introduction:
Over the years, extensive knowledge of natural substances led to the development of various medical systems, including traditional Indian medicine. Among the oldest healing practices, herbal therapy involves utilizing whole plants or their specific parts to manage chronic illnesses and promote overall health. Numerous herbal formulations have proven effective in relieving symptoms of various health conditions, including depression and common illnesses like colds and flu. Approximately 80% of the global population is believed to rely on herbal remedies as their main form of healthcare. The demand for herbal medicines is growing swiftly, largely due to the side effects and toxicity linked to conventional allopathic drugs. This surge in interest has also resulted in a significant rise in herbal medicine manufacturers. For centuries, natural herbs have been widely used to prevent and treat numerous illnesses. Awareness of both their

advantages and limitations has encouraged the advancement of new herbal therapies that promote health with minimal or no adverse effects. [1]

The easy accessibility of medicinal plants supports the continued use of traditional medicine based on natural resources. Unlike modern medicine, which relies on scientific validation, traditional healing methods are grounded in cultural knowledge and reflect the lifestyle and beliefs of the communities that practice them. Many individuals prefer natural remedies, believing them to be safer than synthetic pharmaceuticals. Additionally, traditional treatments are often more affordable, as medicinal plants can be grown in home gardens. The therapeutic use of plant-based products can be traced back more than five thousand years, with historical records indicating their role in treating diseases and revitalizing the body in ancient Indian and Roman civilizations. In India, medicinal plants are widely used by people from all walks of life, especially within traditional healing systems like Ayurveda, Siddha, and Unani, as well as in various folk medicine practices. Plants play a crucial role in maintaining ecological balance by providing essential services that sustain human life and other living organisms. This importance has also contributed to a significant increase in the number of herbal medicine manufacturers. [2,3]

India is considered one of the most significant repositories of medicinal plant resources among ancient civilizations. Nature represents a powerful symbol of balanced coexistence, providing a wealth of healing substances derived from plants, animals, and minerals that form the foundation for treating numerous human diseases. The demand for medicinal plants continues to grow, gaining increasing acceptance across diverse communities. Herbal medicines go beyond their traditional and cultural significance, offering immense potential for the discovery of powerful new bioactive compounds. Medicinal plants serve as an important source for such therapeutic innovations. The use of these plants for treating diseases dates back to the very beginnings of human history, when early humans relied solely on their natural environment—particularly plants—for healing and medicine. Traditional healthcare systems are gaining increasing popularity worldwide, driven by the rising public interest in herbal remedies. Their widespread acceptance is largely attributed to their beneficial health effects and the low or negligible risk of side effects when treating various complex health conditions. The medicinal use of herbs is deeply valued and regarded as a vital part of cultural heritage. [4,5]

Herbal medicines go beyond their traditional and cultural significance, offering immense potential for the discovery of powerful new bioactive compounds. Medicinal plants serve as an important source for such therapeutic innovations. The use of these plants for treating diseases dates back to the very beginnings of human history, when early humans relied solely on their natural environment—particularly plants—for healing and medicine. While many synthetic drugs are used to treat various diseases, they frequently cause a number of side effects. In

comparison, plants are rich in chemical compounds with strong biological properties, providing a natural and effective alternative to synthetic medicines. Herbs have traditionally been a core component of healing systems, and their use is now gaining widespread popularity as a preferred form of treatment across the globe.[6]

Since ancient times, natural herbs have been widely utilized for the prevention and treatment of numerous diseases. Traditional healthcare systems are steadily gaining global recognition and popularity, driven by the increasing public interest in herbal medicine. Their broad acceptance is primarily due to their proven effectiveness and minimal side effects in addressing a variety of complex health issues. In many developing nations, a large segment of the population is thought to depend on traditional remedies as their main source of healthcare. Natural products have been utilized for centuries through traditional remedies, therapies, and oils, although many of their active compounds are still yet to be identified. Traditional knowledge forms the primary basis for exploring and understanding the medicinal uses of plant-derived natural products. Medicinal herbs have long been considered reliable indicators of ecosystem health. These plants are distributed unevenly across the globe, with the majority harvested from wild environments. They are important sources of bioactive compounds that play a crucial role in the discovery and development of new drugs. The medicinal use of herbs is deeply valued and considered an integral aspect of cultural traditions. India, among ancient civilizations, is renowned for its rich diversity of medicinal plants. Plants play a crucial role in maintaining ecological balance, providing essential functions that support the survival of both humans and other living beings. [7,8]

Punica granatum (PG) Linn. (pomegranate), a member of the Punicaceae family, is a deciduous shrub or small tree characterized by a perennial root system. It can reach a height of 12 to 16 feet and has a lifespan exceeding 200 years. PG produces red, round, juicy, and sweet fruits containing arils (edible seeds). Pomegranates are among the earliest fruit trees cultivated by humans, dating back to 4000–3000 BCE. The name "pomegranate" comes from the Latin words pomum (meaning apple) and granatus (meaning seeded or grainy), which is why it is also referred to as the "seeded apple." Pomegranates originally came from Persia, located in the heart of the Middle East, and later spread to Mediterranean areas, particularly India and China. They originated in the Mediterranean region and are well known for their numerous medicinal properties. Incorporating pomegranates into the diet can help regulate blood pressure, cholesterol, and blood sugar levels, as well as alleviate digestive issues and soothe sore throats. Additionally, pomegranates have shown beneficial effects in the management of several types of cancer. Clinical studies indicate that pomegranates may enhance blood flow to the heart, act as a natural blood thinner, help prevent arterial plaque build-up, and reduce cholesterol levels. Pomegranates are widely recognized for their strong antioxidant and anti-inflammatory

properties. They also serve as a rich source of dietary fibre. Pomegranate flower juice is utilized in treating nosebleeds and bleeding gums, as well as for skin toning. The fruit pulp and seeds are commonly used to address digestive issues. Rich in vitamin C, vitamin K, and folate, pomegranate seeds help alleviate symptoms of anaemia such as tiredness, dizziness, loss of hearing, and faintness. Dried and powdered flower buds are traditionally used to treat bronchitis. Pomegranate waste is utilized in the production of tooth powders and toothpaste due to its strong antibacterial and antimicrobial properties, which aid in the treatment of dental issues. In the figure 1 & 2 biological classification and phytocompounds isolated from PG are presented respectively. [9,10]

Classification of *Punica granatum* linn.

Kingdom: Plantae
Division: Magnoliophyta
Class: Magnoliopsida
Order: Myrtales
Family: Punicaceae
Genus: *Punica*
Species: *granatum*
Name: *P. granatum*

Figure 1: Biological Classification of PG. [9]

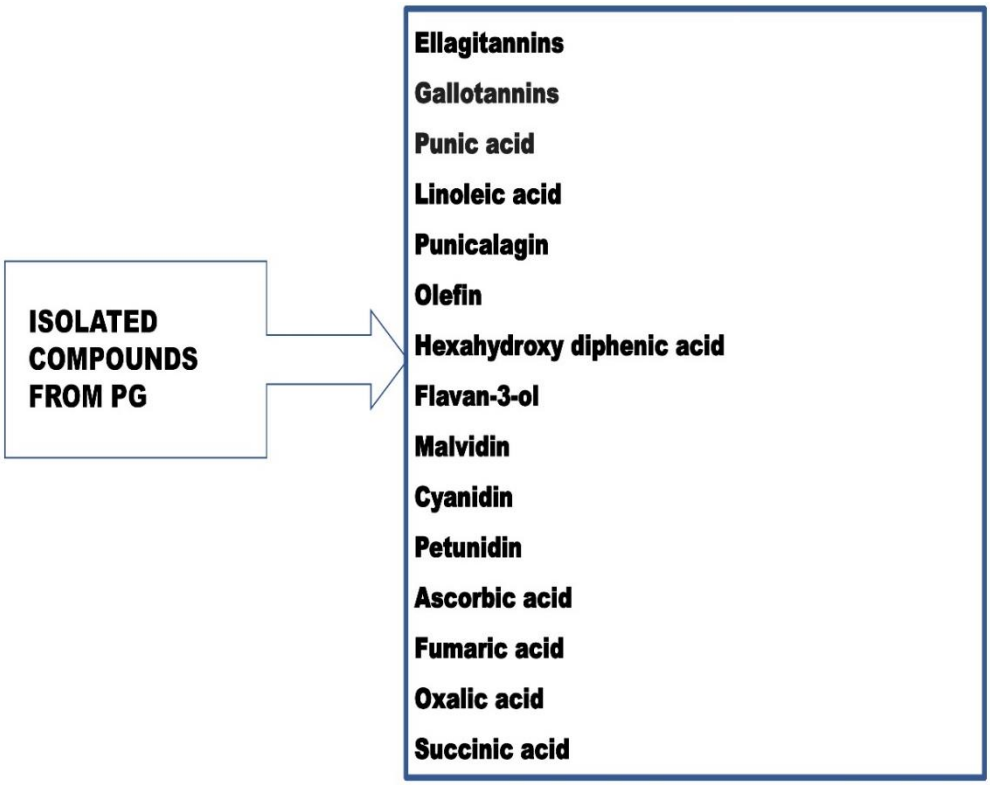

Figure 2: Isolated phytochemicals of PG [10]

Pharmacological activities of PG:

1. **Anti-inflammatory:** Inflammation is the body's natural defence mechanism designed to protect tissues from infections and external damage. It occurs in two forms—acute and chronic—both involving similar biological processes. Upon detecting a harmful stimulus, cell surface receptors initiate the inflammatory response by releasing signalling molecules and activating immune cells. Typically, this response subsides once the threat is neutralized. However, when the body is unable to repair the damage or remove the underlying cause, inflammation can become persistent. In such instances, immune cells and inflammatory mediators remain active, leading to ongoing or chronic inflammation that may result in tissue damage and contribute to disease progression. Acute inflammation usually arises quickly in response to infections caused by pathogens, whereas chronic inflammation develops slowly and can persist over long durations. This extended immune response may spread through the bloodstream and lymphatic system, intensifying symptoms and significantly contributing to the onset of various diseases. Chronic systemic inflammation is now recognized as a significant factor in the development of conditions such as cancer, diabetes, cardiotoxicity, and various respiratory and metabolic disorders. PG and its active phytochemicals demonstrate anti-inflammatory effects by inhibiting critical inflammatory pathways and reducing the production of pro-inflammatory agents like cytokines and enzymes. Bioactive compounds in PG, such as punicic acid, help modulate immune responses, minimize cellular inflammation, protect tissues from damage, and contribute to the management and prevention of chronic inflammatory diseases. [11,12]
2. **Anti-arthritic:** Arthritis is a systemic inflammatory condition that primarily targets the diarthrodial joints. It is the most prevalent type of inflammatory arthritis and has a significant impact on society, contributing to high healthcare costs, disability, and reduced productivity. Arthritis affects approximately 1% of the global population and is linked to considerable morbidity and mortality. While its exact pathogenesis is not yet fully understood, significant progress has been made over the past decade in uncovering the cellular and molecular mechanisms involved. Rheumatoid Arthritis (RA) is a long-term autoimmune disease of unknown origin, primarily marked by ongoing inflammation in the synovial joints. It often involves multiple organs and is associated with the presence of autoantibodies, such as rheumatoid factor and anti-citrullinated peptide antibodies. Typical signs of RA include joint damage, especially in the hands, wrists, and knees. As the condition progresses, it can affect areas beyond the joints, potentially resulting in early death and numerous complications such as physical disability and reduced quality of life—issues that are particularly significant in developing nations.

Ongoing inflammation leads to systemic disruption and continued joint deterioration, a common occurrence among nearly all individuals with RA. Epidemiological studies show that RA impacts approximately 1% of the adult population, with a higher occurrence in women and older adults. Each year, about 35-40 new cases are reported per lakh individuals. Previous research suggests that PG shows strong potential in managing RA, primarily due to its capacity to lower critical inflammatory markers such as interleukin-1 beta (IL-1β), nitric oxide (NO), and prostaglandin E2 (PGE2). PG also inhibits the release of cytokines involved in inflammatory responses, including tumour necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) and interleukin-6 (IL-6), while also reducing the activity of enzymes such as cyclooxygenase. These elements play a key role in the onset and advancement of arthritic disorders. [13,14]

3. **Anti-anxiety:** Anxiety is a normal emotional and physical reaction to situations involving stress, perceived danger, or uncertainty. It often involves feelings of worry, fear, or nervousness, which can vary in intensity from mild to severe. Experiencing anxiety occasionally is a typical part of life, especially during challenging events such as exams, public speaking, or significant life transitions. However, when anxiety becomes frequent or intense enough to disrupt everyday activities, it may be a sign of an anxiety disorder. Whereas mild anxiety is a usual portion of life and can even be valuable in motivating individuals to take action or evade danger, extreme or determined anxiety may restrict with daily working and quality of life. Anxiety becomes a concern when it is uneven to the definite threat or persists long after the stressful event has passed. In such cases, it may be classified as an anxiety disorder—a cluster of mental health situations that includes generalized anxiety disorder (GAD), panic disorder as well as social anxiety disorder, in addition phobias. These disorders are among the most common psychiatric conditions worldwide, affecting millions of people across different age groups. The causes of anxiety can be multifactorial, counting hereditary disposition, ecological stressors, brain chemistry inequities, trauma, or long-lasting health circumstances. Considerate the nature, grounds, and impression of anxiety is critical for initial diagnosis and operative intervention, which can meaningfully advance outcomes and overall well-being. PG has demonstrated promising anxiolytic effects in preclinical studies. The phytochemicals found in PG have also been shown to enhance GABA activity in the brain, similar to the mechanism of action observed with conventional anti-anxiety medications. PG also exhibits properties such as reducing oxidative stress and providing neuroprotection, which contribute to its effectiveness in managing anxiety disorders. Traditionally, it has been used to improve sleep quality, calm brain activity, and treat conditions related to stress. [15, 16, 17]

4. **Anti-diabetic:** Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a chronic metabolic disorder characterized by persistently elevated blood glucose levels, known as hyperglycaemia, which can lead to serious and permanent damage to various organs over time. It is estimated that by 2030, more than 630 million people worldwide will be living with DM, a figure expected to rise to over 770 million by 2045. The condition occurs when the body either fails to produce sufficient insulin or cannot effectively use the insulin it produces, resulting in poor blood sugar control. This imbalance contributes to a range of complications linked to diabetes. A major outcome of DM is hyperglycaemia, which plays a significant role in triggering oxidative stress. Oxidative stress disrupts insulin function, impairs its activity, and decreases its secretion. Substantial evidence highlights the role of oxidative stress in connecting both psychological and physiological stress to complications associated with diabetes. As a result, antioxidants play a vital role in managing these complications in individuals with diabetes. Oxidative stress arises from the excessive generation of free radicals, which damage cells and contribute to the deterioration of pancreatic beta cells. PG is rich in several biologically active compounds, including flavonoids and punicalagin, which contribute to its significant antidiabetic effects. It helps enhance insulin sensitivity and promotes glucose uptake by cells, thereby improving blood sugar control. Additionally, PG reduces oxidative stress and inflammation—two factors strongly associated with diabetes-related complications. It may also inhibit enzymes responsible for carbohydrate digestion, resulting in a slower and more controlled release of glucose into the bloodstream. [18,19]
5. **Wound healing:** Wounds can result from accidental or surgical injuries, as well as various medical conditions. They are often accompanied by pain, inflammation, and impaired function, impacting a patient's quality of life and leading to increased financial burdens. Wound healing is a intricate biological process that involves restoring damaged and impaired cellular components and tissue layers. The skin acts as the body's primary defence barrier, shielding it from physical, chemical, and biological threats in the external environment. When this barrier is compromised due to a wound, timely and effective care is crucial. Skin wounds pose a major global health concern, often involving high healthcare costs and limited success with current treatment options. These injuries are marked by a loss of cellular cohesion and structural stability within the skin layers, which disrupts the skin’s protective function and breaks the continuity of the epithelium, potentially impacting underlying tissues. When the skin is damaged, the exposure of sub-endothelial components, such as collagen and tissue factors, triggers platelet aggregation, leading to their degranulation and the release of chemotactic signals and growth factors. These compounds aid in clot formation, ensuring proper haemostasis. Neutrophils are the

first immune cells to reach the wound site, where they remove debris and eliminate bacteria, creating a suitable environment for healing. The following proliferative phase involves a marked increase in various cell types and the formation of extensive connective tissue. During this stage, fibroblasts, skin cells, and endothelial cells migrate to the wound area. The extracellular matrix (ECM)—comprising collagen, elastin, proteoglycans, and hyaluronic acid—forms granulation tissue that replaces the initial blood clot. This phase is controlled by a variety of cytokines and growth factors, including interleukins, members of the transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β) family, and angiogenic molecules such as vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF). It typically lasts from several days to a few weeks. The final stage, known as the remodelling phase, involves a delicate balance between programmed cell death (apoptosis) and the formation of new cells. During this prolonged period—which may extend from several months to years—excess extracellular matrix (ECM) and immature type III collagen are broken down, while mature type I collagen is synthesized, contributing to the proper reconstruction and organization of the tissue. PG and its phytochemicals aid wound healing through various mechanisms, such as minimizing inflammation and oxidative stress. They also boost fibroblast function, encourage collagen synthesis, and stimulate the growth of new blood vessels. Furthermore, PG supports the regeneration of the epithelial layer and contributes to the formation of a more mature and structurally organized scar. [20, 21]

Conclusion:

Natural compounds have been utilized for wound treatment for thousands of years. These compounds, derived from a wide range of plants and animals, serve as readily available resources for various ailments. Their effectiveness has been well established in traditional Chinese and Indian medicine practices. The use of medicinal plants for healing is as ancient as humanity itself. The relationship between humans and their quest for natural remedies dates back to early history, as evidenced by numerous sources, including written records, preserved monuments, and original plant-based medicines. Given the lack of sufficient knowledge at the time about the causes of illnesses or which plants could be used for treatment, all practices were primarily based on experience. Until the emergence of iatrochemistry in the 16th century, plants served as the main source for both treatment and prevention of diseases. However, the reduced effectiveness of synthetic drugs and the growing number of their side effects have renewed interest in the use of natural remedies. The medicinal use of herbs dates back to the earliest days of human civilization and has progressed alongside it. Traditional healers across the globe have relied on native plants and herbs for centuries to treat numerous health conditions, many of which have shown distinct pharmacological effects. PG is a valuable plant recognized for its

wide range of pharmacological activities. PG has shown significant promise in promoting overall health and well-being across multiple areas. The fruits, have been investigated for their active compounds and therapeutic benefits. It is a well-known traditional medicinal herb in India, widely used in Ayurveda for its numerous effects, including anti-arthritic, antianxiety, anti-inflammatory, antidiabetic, and more. This review highlights the extensive pharmacological activities of PG, largely attributed to its abundant phytochemical content. The bioactive constituents present in the plant hold promise as potential lead compounds for the development of new therapeutic agents targeting a variety of diseases.

References:

1. Ballabh B, Chaurasia OP. Traditional medicinal plants of cold desert Ladakh used in treatment of cold, cough and fever. J Ethnopharmacol. 2007;112(2):341-349.
2. Mishra BB, Tiwari VK. Natural products: An evolving role in future drug discovery. Eur J Med Chem. 2011;46:4769–807.
3. Petrovska BB. Historical review of medicinal plants' usage. Phcog Rev 2012;6:1-5.
4. Luqman S, Rizvi SI, Beer AM, Khare SK, Atukeren P. Efficacy of herbal drugs in human diseases and disorders. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med. 2014; 273676.
5. Yuan H, Ma Q, Ye L, Piao G. The traditional medicine and modern medicine from natural products. Molecules. 2016;21(5):559.
6. Wiart C. Etnopharmacology of medicinal plants. New Jersey: Humana Press; 2006. p. 1-50.
7. Tene V, Malago O, Finzi PV, Vidari G. An ethnobotanical survey of medicinal plants used in Loja and Zamora Chinchipi, Ecuador. J Ethnopharmacol. 2007;111:63–81.
8. Pandey MM, Rastogi S, Rawat AK. Indian traditional Ayurvedic system of medicine and nutritional supplementation. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med. 2013;376327.
9. Puneeth HR, Sharath Chandra SP. A review on potential therapeutic properties of Pomegranate (Punica granatum L.). Plant Sci Today. 2020;7(1):9–16.
10. Maphetu N, Unuofin JO, Masuku NP, Olisah C, Lebelo SL. Medicinal uses, pharmacological activities, phytochemistry, and the molecular mechanisms of Punica granatum L. (pomegranate) plant extracts: a review. Biomed Pharmacother. 2022 ;153:113256.
11. Ravipati AS, Zhang L, Koyyalamudi SR, Jeong SC, Reddy N, Smith PT, Bartlett J, Shanmugam K, Münch G, Wu MJ. Antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activities of selected Chinese medicinal plants and their relation with antioxidant content. BMC Complement Altern Med. 2012;12:173.

12. Shukla M, Gupta K, Rasheed Z, Haqqi TM. Bioavailable constituents/metabolites of *Punica granatum* L. preferentially inhibit COX-2 activity ex vivo and IL-1β-induced PGE_2 production in human chondrocytes in vitro. J Inflamm. 2008 Jun 13;5:9.
13. Mahdavi MM, Seyedsadjadi N, Javadivala Z, *et al.* Potential effects of pomegranate (*Punica granatum*) on rheumatoid arthritis: a systematic review. Int J Clin Pract. 2021;75(8):e13999.
14. Ahmed S, Wang N, Hafeez BB, Cheruvu VK, Haqqi TM. *Punica granatum* L. extract inhibits IL-1β-induced expression of matrix metalloproteinases by inhibiting activation of MAP kinases and NF-κB in human chondrocytes. J Nutr. 2005;135(9):2096-2102.
15. Richards A, Fawzy M, Mannix S. Anxiety, depression and quality of life – a systematic review of evidence from longitudinal observational studies. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2021;18(22):12022.
16. Flores-Bazán T, Betanzos-Cabrera G, Guerrero-Solano JA, Negrete-Díaz JV, German-Ponciano LJ, Olivo-Ramírez D. Pomegranate *(Punica granatum L.*) and its phytochemicals as anxiolytic; an underreported effect with therapeutic potential: a systematic review. Brain Res. 2023;1820:148554.
17. Kulkarni S, Bathe R, Javalgikar A. Evaluation of Punica granatum fruit juice for anti-anxiety activity. Int J Biomed Adv Res. 2016;7(9):452–455.
18. Alam S, Hasan MK, Neaz S, Hussain N, Hossain MF, Rahman T. Diabetes mellitus: insights from epidemiology, biochemistry, risk factors, diagnosis, complications and comprehensive management. Diabetology. 2021;2(2):36–50.
19. Das S, Barman S. Antidiabetic and antihyperlipidemic effects of ethanolic extract of leaves of *Punica granatum* in alloxan-induced non–insulin-dependent diabetic albino rats. Indian J Pharmacol. 2012;44(2):219–224.
20. Murthy KN, Reddy VK, Veigas JM, Murthy UD. Study on wound healing activity of *Punica granatum* peel. J Med Food. 2004;7(2):256–9.
21. Araujo-Filho I, Batista da Silva F, Gonçalves GF, Meneses do Rêgo AC. Pomegranate (*Punica granatum* L.) and wound healing: a review of experimental studies. J Surg Clin Res. 2023;14(1):63–72.

Bhumi Publishing, India
July 2025

HERBAL PLANTS AND THEIR ROLE IN PREVENTING PEPTIC ULCER

Dipti Gohil*, Ghanshyam Parmar, Sunil Kardani, Hadia Rajesh
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Vadodara-391760, Gujarat, India.
*Corresponding author E-mail: diptigohil2014@gmail.com

Abstract:
Peptic ulcer disease (PUD) is a widespread gastrointestinal condition caused by an imbalance between aggressive factors like acid and pepsin and defensive mechanisms of the gastric mucosa. Herbal medicines have been widely used for their potential gastroprotective effects due to their antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, cytoprotective, and anti-Helicobacter pylori properties. This review summarizes scientific evidence supporting the role of fifteen medicinal plants in preventing and healing peptic ulcers, highlighting their mechanisms of action, bioactive constituents, and findings from experimental and clinical studies.

Keywords: Peptic Ulcer Disease, Herbal Medicine, Gastroprotective

Introduction:

Peptic ulcer disease (PUD) refers to mucosal ulceration in the stomach or proximal duodenum resulting from disruption of the equilibrium between protective and aggressive factors of the gastric mucosa. Helicobacter pylori infection, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), alcohol consumption, stress, and smoking contribute to ulcer formation. Conventional treatments include proton pump inhibitors, H2-receptor antagonists, antacids, and antibiotics. However, adverse effects, drug resistance, and recurrence rates necessitate exploring alternative therapies. Medicinal plants have been used traditionally for gastrointestinal ailments and offer multiple mechanisms of gastroprotection. This review evaluates fifteen herbal plants that have shown promise in preventing and treating peptic ulcers.

1. *Aloe vera*

Aloe vera contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[1]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Aloe vera*. In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Aloe vera* extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[2]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Aloe vera* have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Aloe vera* were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Aloe vera shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

2. *Allium sativum* (Garlic)

Allium sativum (Garlic) contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Allium sativum* (Garlic). In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Allium sativum* (Garlic) extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[3]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Allium sativum* (Garlic) have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Allium sativum* (Garlic) were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.[4]

Allium sativum (Garlic) shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

3. *Zingiber officinale* (Ginger)

Zingiber officinale (Ginger) contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[5]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Zingiber officinale* (Ginger). In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Zingiber officinale* (Ginger) extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[6]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Zingiber officinale* (Ginger) have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Zingiber*

officinale (Ginger) were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Zingiber officinale (Ginger) shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

4. *Curcuma longa* (Turmeric)

Curcuma longa (Turmeric) contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[7]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Curcuma longa* (Turmeric). In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Curcuma longa* (Turmeric) extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.

Though limited, clinical trials on *Curcuma longa* (Turmeric) have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Curcuma longa* (Turmeric) were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.[8]

Curcuma longa (Turmeric) shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

5. *Camellia sinensis* (Green tea)

Camellia sinensis (Green tea) contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[9]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Camellia sinensis* (Green tea). In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Camellia sinensis* (Green tea) extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[10]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Camellia sinensis* (Green tea) have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Camellia sinensis* (Green tea) were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Camellia sinensis (Green tea) shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

6. *Carica papaya* (Papaya)

Carica papaya (Papaya) contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[11]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Carica papaya* (Papaya). In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Carica papaya* (Papaya) extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[12]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Carica papaya* (Papaya) have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Carica papaya* (Papaya) were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Carica papaya (Papaya) shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

7. *Mangifera indica* (Mango)

Mangifera indica (Mango) contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[13]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Mangifera indica* (Mango). In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Mangifera indica* (Mango) extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[14]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Mangifera indica* (Mango) have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Mangifera indica* (Mango) were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Mangifera indica (Mango) shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

8. *Ocimum sanctum* (Holy Basil)

Ocimum sanctum (Holy Basil) contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[15]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Ocimum sanctum* (Holy Basil). In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Ocimum sanctum* (Holy Basil) extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[16]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Ocimum sanctum* (Holy Basil) have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Ocimum sanctum* (Holy Basil) were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Ocimum sanctum (Holy Basil) shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

9. *Piper betle* (Betel leaf)

Piper betle (Betel leaf) contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[17]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Piper betle* (Betel leaf). In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Piper betle* (Betel leaf) extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[18]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Piper betle* (Betel leaf) have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Piper betle* (Betel leaf) were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Piper betle (Betel leaf) shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

10. *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (Licorice)

Glycyrrhiza glabra (Licorice) contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (Licorice). In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (Licorice) extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[19]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (Licorice) have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions.[20] Standardized extracts of *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (Licorice) were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.[21]

Glycyrrhiza glabra (Licorice) shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

11. *Cynodon dactylon*

Cynodon dactylon contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[22]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Cynodon dactylon*. In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Cynodon dactylon* extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[23]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Cynodon dactylon* have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Cynodon dactylon* were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Cynodon dactylon shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

12. *Ficus religiosa*

Ficus religiosa contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through

mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[24]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Ficus religiosa*. In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Ficus religiosa* extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[25]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Ficus religiosa* have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Ficus religiosa* were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Ficus religiosa shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

13. *Terminalia chebula*

Terminalia chebula contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Terminalia chebula*. In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Terminalia chebula* extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[26]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Terminalia chebula* have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Terminalia chebula* were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.[27]

Terminalia chebula shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

14. *Vetiveria zizanioides*

Vetiveria zizanioides contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of *Vetiveria zizanioides*. In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of *Vetiveria zizanioides* extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[28]

Though limited, clinical trials on *Vetiveria zizanioides* have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of *Vetiveria zizanioides* were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.[29]

Vetiveria zizanioides shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

15. Ginseng

Ginseng contains bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, phenolics, terpenoids, saponins, and essential oils which confer gastroprotective effects. These constituents act through mechanisms including antioxidant activity, stimulation of prostaglandin synthesis, enhancement of mucus secretion, inhibition of gastric acid secretion, eradication of Helicobacter pylori, and strengthening of mucosal barrier integrity.[30]

Numerous experimental studies have demonstrated the anti-ulcerogenic effects of Ginseng. In animal models of ethanol-, NSAID-, and stress-induced ulcers, administration of Ginseng extract reduced ulcer index, restored mucosal integrity, and enhanced mucus production. Oxidative stress markers were lowered, while antioxidant enzyme levels increased.[31]

Though limited, clinical trials on Ginseng have reported improvement in dyspeptic symptoms and endoscopic healing of gastric lesions. Standardized extracts of Ginseng were well tolerated and showed comparable efficacy to conventional therapies in some studies.

Ginseng shows significant anti-ulcer potential through multiple mechanisms and warrants further investigation in large-scale clinical trials.

Conclusion:

The fifteen medicinal plants reviewed demonstrate substantial evidence of gastroprotective effects in experimental studies and, to some extent, in clinical settings. They act through diverse mechanisms including antioxidation, cytoprotection, anti-inflammation, and anti-Helicobacter pylori activity. Standardization of extracts, dose optimization, and rigorous clinical trials are essential to validate these findings and support integration of these herbs into mainstream therapy for peptic ulcer disease.

References:

1. Salim AS. *Aloe vera* prevents gastric ulceration and promotes healing in indomethacin-induced ulcer in rats. J Ethnopharmacol. 1990;29(3):315-24.

2. Pandurangan A, *et al. Aloe vera* gel protects against oxidative damage in aspirin-induced gastric mucosal injury. Pharm Biol. 2010;48(10):1110-6.
3. Kim DH, *et al.* Gastroprotective effects of garlic extract in rats. Food Chem Toxicol. 2013; 55:409-16.
4. Cellini L, *et al.* Inhibition of Helicobacter pylori by garlic extract. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol. 1996;13(4):273-7.
5. Al-Yahya MA, *et al.* Gastroprotective activities of ginger *Zingiber officinale* against various ulcer models. Saudi J Gastroenterol. 2006;12(2):75-81.
6. Tohda C, *et al.* Anti-ulcerogenic effect of ginger extract. Phytother Res. 2012;26(3):337-43.
7. Sumbul S, *et al.* Gastroprotective effect of curcumin on ethanol-induced gastric ulcer. Indian J Pharmacol. 2011;43(6):571-4.
8. Shehzad A, *et al.* Curcumin inhibits Helicobacter pylori infection in mice. Biol Pharm Bull. 2010;33(6):1004-7.
9. Jainu M, Devi CS. Effect of green tea on indomethacin-induced gastric ulcers. Chem Biol Interact. 2006;162(2):123-32.
10. Matsubara S, *et al.* In vitro inhibitory effects of green tea polyphenols on Helicobacter pylori. J Gastroenterol. 2003;38(9):844-8.
11. Dhar ML, *et al.* Anti-ulcer activity of *Carica papaya* in rats. J Ethnopharmacol. 2002;83(1-2):231-7.
12. Pandey R, *et al.* Papaya extract protects against ethanol-induced ulcers. Pharm Biol. 2010;48(9):998-1003.
13. Ojewole JA. Protective effect of *Mangifera indica* on ethanol-induced gastric mucosal damage. Phytother Res. 2005;19(10):862-5.
14. Gupta M, *et al.* Anti-ulcer activity of *Mangifera indica* leaf extract. Pharm Biol. 2010;48(6):650-4.
15. Goel RK, *et al.* Gastroprotective effect of *Ocimum sanctum* on ulcers. Indian J Exp Biol. 1990;28(8):620-4.
16. Singh S, *et al.* Stress ulcer protection by *Ocimum sanctum*. J Ethnopharmacol. 2003;84(1):1-6.
17. Bhattacharya S, *et al.* Gastroprotective property of *Piper betle* leaf extract. J Ethnopharmacol. 2007;111(2):397-402.
18. Umathe SN, *et al.* Betel leaf extract enhances mucin secretion. Indian J Pharmacol. 2008;40(2):79-84.
19. Rees WD. Effect of deglycyrrhizinated liquorice in healing chronic duodenal ulcers. BMJ. 1973;3(5870):666-8.

20. El-Abhar HS, *et al.* Licorice extract prevents indomethacin-induced gastric ulcers. J Ethnopharmacol. 2003;84(2-3):217-24.
21. Borrelli F, *et al.* Effectiveness of licorice in peptic ulcer disease. Phytother Res. 2000;14(8):581-91.
22. Alagesaboopathi C. Anti-ulcer activity of *Cynodon dactylon*. Indian J Exp Biol. 2011;49(7):531-4.
23. Surendra S, *et al.* Gastroprotective potential of *Cynodon dactylon* extract. J Ethnopharmacol. 2006;104(3):346-9.
24. Bafna PA, Balaraman R. *Ficus religiosa* exerts anti-ulcer effect in rats. J Ethnopharmacol. 2004;93(3):385-90.
25. Sairam K, *et al.* Anti-ulcer effect of *Ficus religiosa* bark extract. J Ethnopharmacol. 2003;86(1):1-6.
26. Raju D, *et al.* Anti-ulcer activity of *Terminalia chebula* fruit extract. Pharm Biol. 2009;47(9):892-7.
27. Kaur S, *et al.* Healing effects of *Terminalia chebula* on gastric ulcers. Indian J Pharm Sci. 2008;70(6):827-31.
28. Petchi RR, *et al.* Anti-ulcer effect of *Vetiveria zizanioides*. Indian J Nat Prod Resour. 2011;2(3):338-43.
29. Roy RK, *et al.* Stress-protective effects of *Vetiveria zizanioides* essential oil. J Nat Med. 2012;66(3):552-8.
30. Kim DH, *et al.* Ginsenoside Rb1 reduces gastric mucosal injury. J Ginseng Res. 2004;28(4):187-92.
31. Park EK, *et al.* Protective effect of Panax ginseng on gastric mucosal injury. J Ethnopharmacol. 2005;102(1):47-53.

Bhumi Publishing, India
July 2025

ALPHA HYDROXY ACIDS (AHAS): DUAL ROLES IN SKIN THERAPY AND PHOTOTOXICITY

Ashim Kumar Sen*, Dhanya B. Sen, Rajesh A. Maheshwari, Dillip Kumar Dash
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara - 391760, Gujarat
*Corresponding author E-mail: ashims01@gmail.com

Abstract:
Analogous to organic acids, AHAs have an alpha position and a hydroxyl group connected to it. Cosmetics frequently make heavy use of AHAs such as malic acid, citric acid, lactic acid, tartaric acid, and glycolic acidAs a superficial peeling agent and to enhance the appearance of acne and keratoses, AHAs have found usage in dermatology. Swelling, burning, and pruritus are some of the unpleasant responses that individuals utilizing AHA products may have, therefore it's important to be cautious. The dilemma of whether AHAs are beneficial or harmful to the skin arises because it is not known whether they increase or diminish photodamage. This manuscript's overarching goal is to provide a comprehensive overview of the processes and biological effects of AHAs on keratinocytes from both humans and animals. It is the concentration of AHA that determines whether it is beneficial or harmful to human skin, we conclude. At this point in time, the workings of AHAs are known, which helps in coming up with new ways to protect skin from UV damage.

Keywords: Alpha Hydroxy Acids (AHAs), Phototoxicity, Skin Peeling, UV Radiation, Dermatological Applications

Introduction:

The aging process starts at birth and doesn't stop until death. Various reactions in the skin's dermal and epidermal layers, as well as in hair follicles, blood vessels, pigment cells, sebaceous glands, and secondary organs, cause the skin to age. In this situation, the outermost layer of skin, known as the stratum corneum, thickens while the innermost layer, the epidermis, thins. Roughness, scaling, and eventual skin breakdown are subsequent symptoms of the syndrome. Anti-aging medicine is a branch of medicine that aims to reverse the effects of aging by identifying and treating dysfunction, illnesses, and diseases in their early stages using cutting-edge scientific and medical technology. [1,2]

A class of nonorganic acids known as hydroxy acids (also called fruit acids) has been in use for the treatment of skin diseases for the better part of four decades. These anti-aging skincare components have been extensively researched and used. These components have been proven in clinical testing to improve skin hydration, elasticity, tone, and wrinkles while also reversing the effects of photoaging. Two major groups of hydroxy acids are alpha hydroxy acids (AHAs) and

beta hydroxy acids (BHAs). Many skin issues, including acne, scars, pigmentation, dryness, and wrinkles, can be alleviated by AHA. They play an important role in the Krebs cycle, glycolysis, and the manufacture of serin, among other metabolic processes and vital cell cycles. AHAs have dual action on the skin's surface and deeper layers. By disrupting the ionic connection between the stratum corneum's epidermal cells, AHAs promote exfoliation when administered topically to the skin. The process encourages cellular renewal and leads to the exfoliation of hard, lifeless skin. In addition to its original application in treating hyperkeratosis and other skin diseases that impact subcutaneous turnover, there is evidence that AHAs can lessen the look of wrinkles and fine lines, dark spots, and other skin flaws. Additionally, AHAs enhance the function of the subcutaneous barrier, boost the proliferation and thickness of the epidermis, and replenish moisture and plumpness by increasing the production of hyaluronic acid. The well-known advantages of alpha hydroxy acids (AHAs) include skin whitening, firming, exfoliation, moisturization, wrinkle reduction, fine line and wrinkle reduction, collagen synthesis, and firming. The sugar-derived glycolic acid is the tiniest of the AHA molecules. Currently, there are ophthalmic formulations that contain 10-15% GA that are used topically, vaginally, or rectally to treat skin aging and hyperpigmentation caused by sunshine. In particular, those with very sensitive skin may experience an acute stinging or burning sensation after applying an AHA. More and more, particularly for oily skin types, newer, more lipophilic AHAs will be used in the future. [3]

In 1974, Van Scott and Yu suggested that AHAs could significantly impact keratinization-related illnesses. There is little to no danger in using AHAs to exfoliate any kind of skin. Through detaching and desquamating the stratum corneum, AHAs reduce corneocyte cohesiveness just above the granular layer. [4] As a result, AHA peels have long enjoyed widespread use among dermatologists. Acne, hyperpigmentation, roughness, scars, melasma, age spots, and seborrhea are some of the skin conditions that can benefit from AHA peels, which can be performed in a superficial or medium-depth manner.[5] By boosting glycosaminoglycan production and skin thickening, AHAs can alleviate wrinkles. [6] All of these things contribute to AHAs' status as a popular and extensively utilized medication. Research has shown that AHAs can inhibit the growth of skin tumors caused by ultraviolet (UV) radiation [7], furthermore, there is speculation among dermatologists that AHAs may have other purposes, like as antioxidant action.[8] On the other hand, there are academics who disagree and have produced research disproving these claims; for example, some have found that using AHAs topically can make skin more sensitive to UVB radiation. Sunlight exposure in conjunction with AHAs also caused skin pigmentation to be uneven. [9]

The verdict on whether AHAs are skin-friendly or not is still up for debate. We don't know how AHAs affect phototoxicity and photoprotection. No significant safety concerns have been raised by the available nonclinical evidence on the use of topical GA at low concentrations, according

to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Redness, swelling, burning, and pruritus are some of the bad responses that might occur from using AHA products, therefore it's important to be cautious. Concentration, pH, exposure duration, and free acid concentration are important variables that affect the efficacy and safety of AHA products.

The Effectiveness of AHAs

Naturally occurring AHAs include lactic acid (found in sour milk), glycolic acid (found in sugarcane), and citric and malic acids (found in fruits). Synthetic AHAs are the norm for cosmetic and dermatological product formulations. Capillary electrophoresis and direct UV detection at 200 nm were found to be effective in separating AHAs from fruit combinations, according to Vorarat *et al.* and Parker *et al.* [10] Hence, it is possible to get a signal and find out how pure a substance is. While it is unclear how AHAs, which are small polar molecules, penetrate the dermis, they do impair the cohesiveness of corneocytes in the skin barrier. [11] Multiple investigations have shown that AHA efficacy is pH, concentration, and exposure period dependent. One component of many household cleaners, for instance, is AHAs. Rinse-off shampoos and conditioners have a wide and rapid application because the AHAs are nearly completely rinsed off the skin within minutes. Various concentrations of AHAs are applied in chemical peeling with varied exposure times, such as 35% (4 minutes), 52.5% (3 minutes), and 70% (2 minutes), at intervals as long as 6 months. Exposure duration is a key factor in determining the efficacy of AHAs, as shown in the aforementioned studies. [12]

Extensive research on AHAs' biological function and therapeutic applications over the last 20 years has shown that their efficacy is dose and exposure period dependent. The effects of GA administered topically on indicators for UV-light-induced damage have been investigated in a few clinical trials. An important step in the development of skin cancer is the DNA damage caused by ultraviolet B radiation (280-320 nm). Apoptosis and effective DNA repair mechanisms shield human keratinocytes against ultraviolet B radiation. [13] Results showed that skin sensitivity to UV radiation and SBC development were both improved after 12 weeks of topical treatment of 10% GA. [14] Our earlier research showed that human keratinocyte HaCaT cells were subjected to a synergistic effect on apoptosis when AHAs were co-treated with a high dose of GA (5 mM) and UVB. Studies like this show that you need to be careful when applying AHAs to your skin. [15]

Indications

Concentration, pH, formulation, and application time are the primary determinants of the hint for the treatment with acids and salts of AHAs in cosmetic and dermatologic applications. The greater the exfoliative, poisonous, and corrosive impact, the lower the pH of the product and the higher the concentration. Before peeling, use a cream or gel designed with 5% to 20% AHAs for long-term usage on acne, hyperkeratotic, or aging skin, or as a pre-peeling treatment. [16,17] For professional peels performed by a dermatologist, you can use solutions containing free AHAs

ranging from 20% to 70%, partially neutralized AHA-solutions from 30% to 70%, or 70% gels. Chemical agents is the best way to describe them. Typically, these compositions have pH values ranging from 2 to <2. As indicated before, certain formulations have prevailing physicochemical effects, and when applied, they cause more intense reactions. Nearly all previous peeling agents, including phenolic acid and TCA, have been replaced by AHA peels in modern times. According to a German survey on dermatology-related dermato-cosmetic procedures, all clinics that have experience with chemical peels employ AHA, while only 37.5% use trichloroacetic acid (TCA) peels. [18] For peeling purposes, glycolic acid is the go-to product in Germany. You can use it for a medium-deep to superficial peel at concentrations up to 70%. It is commonly referred to as the "lunchtime peel" when done at lower concentrations because it is safe to do during lunchtime without experiencing any noticeable side effects. [19,20]

Xerosis, reticulated papillomatosis, striae distensae, psoriasis, and verrucae planae can all be improved with AHA peels, and they can also be used to remove epidermal skin alterations like seborrheic or actinic keratoses, senile lentigines, and verrucae vulgares. There is clinical evidence that treatments containing AHAs are effective for a variety of skin types, including those with mild acne or acne-prone skin, aging skin (especially photoaged skin), and more. Regrettably, research addressing these areas in a controlled manner are uncommon and typically include a rather small sample size. [21]

Acne

In order to test the efficacy of alpha- and beta-hydroxy acid, Kessler *et al.*[22] conducted a split-face, double-blind, randomized, controlled experiment with twenty patients who had moderate to severe facial acne vulgaris. Each of the six treatments involved randomly applying 30% glycolic or salicylic acid to a different side of the face every two weeks. An unbiased observer's evaluation ($p < 0.05$) indicated that both peels significantly reduced papules and pustules after the second treatment. Neither of the peels worked any better than the other. After the initial treatment, negative effects from glycolic acid peels were increasingly common. The safety and efficacy of an AHA-containing cream applied twice daily for 60 days was investigated by Baldo *et al.* [23] on 248 persons with mild to moderate acne. Half of the patients received a pharmacological treatment, while half received the cream alone. The treatment was well-tolerated by 92.3% of users, whether they took it alone or with other drugs. Overall, 64.2% of patients had a good result from the treatment of their acne (64.8% with monotherapy and 63.3% with co-medication), regardless of whether their acne was comedonal, inflammatory, mixed, or any other type. Based on their findings, the researchers advised using the AHA cream either on its own or in conjunction with other treatments for maintenance because it was highly effective and had little negative effects. In a randomised, double-blind trial, Abels *et al.* investigated the safety and effectiveness of 10% glycolic acid in an oil-in-water emulsion (pH 4) for clinical use. The treatment was given once daily as monotherapy to 120 persons with mild acne (Leeds score

0.25-1; mean age 21 ± 5.8) for 90 days. At 45 days into the trial, the active group showed a statistically significant improvement in acne (at the 5% level), and that improvement persisted until 90 days into the trial. The verum was well-received by both physicians and patients in regards to its safety, effectiveness, and ease of use. [24]

Aging skin

The clinical and histological effects of 50% glycolic acid on photoaged skin were studied by Newman and colleagues. [25] After applying the topical solution for 5 minutes once weekly for 4 weeks, they tested the efficacy of glycolic acid (50%) vs the vehicle in a split-face design with 41 volunteers. Five weeks after treatment and before it began, biopsies were obtained. They found fewer solar keratoses, a little lighterening of solar lentigines, less rough texture, and fine wrinkling. According to the histologic examination, the stratum corneum thinning, granular layer augmentation, and epidermal thickening were all found. Dermal collagen thickness has grown in a few samples. The study's authors found that minor photoaging indications can be improved with 50% glycolic acid peels. An open-label study evaluated the effectiveness of various procedures on photoaged skin. Group 1 included topical tretinoin (concentration not mentioned) and sunscreen. Group 2 included sunscreen and subsequent glycolic acid peel (6 min exposure time, 6 times, every two weeks, concentration not specified). Group 3 included a combination of all three procedures (n = 1,000). The study found that none of these methods were more effective than the others. In addition to softer skin, the first two groups demonstrated an improvement in fine wrinkles and skin color irregularities. Surprisingly, no group exhibited statistically significant improvement in any of the criteria except for the combination group (group 3). Interestingly, when compared to those who received tretinoin alone, this group also had a lower incidence of post-treatment skin irritations.

AHAs, Peeling, and UV Irradiation

A number of acids have the ability to irritate the skin while simultaneously stimulating skin cell regeneration and offering long-term cosmetic benefits like reduced wrinkles and lines and improved skin firmness and suppleness. The mechanism by which AHAs "de-age" the skin has been the subject of multiple investigations. The capacity of AHAs to enhance skin cell renewal has been postulated as a possible explanation. Sunlight and other environmental contaminants promote long-term microinflammation, which is a known key factor in skin aging. [26] A large body of research shows that peeling makes skin more photosensitive, and an even larger body of evidence suggests that sun exposure coupled with peeling caused by alpha hydroxy acids (AHAs) causes even more severe skin damage. Patients who were treated with glycolic acid (20-50%) every other day to remove the keratin layer had significant UV damage, according to Lask *et al.* (2005). [27] We showed that UVB-treated HaCaT cells had a synergistic rise in ROS levels when GA was administered at a high concentration of 5 mM. Nevertheless, there are studies that have found the reverse to be true. Davidson and Wolfe (1986) found that chemical peels and

dermabrasion could mitigate the effects of chronic actinic damage on skin, which causes premature aging, to a certain extent. People can't help but be outside in the sun, and that includes those who are peeling. The therapeutic importance of the effects of AHAs on the skin can be better understood by measuring UV-light-induced damage in affected patients. This information could help establish the ideal degree of peeling. [28]

Clinical Peeling Concentration of AHAs

Common clinical indicators of UV damage include an increase in tanning, a decrease in minimal erythemal dose (MED), and an increase in the production of SBCs. Nevertheless, there are noticeable variations in peeling concentrations among individuals. Therefore, additional research involving cells are needed to gather more precise data.

The acidity of AHAs lowers the pH, blocks the action of transferases and kinases, and prevents the creation of ionic connections in the epidermis; these factors work together to aid in desmosome resolution and promote desquamation. Potential side effects of chemical peeling include infection, scarring, post-inflammatory hyperpigmentation, milia, prolonged erythema, and changes in texture. The pH of the stratum corneum's outer three layers can be changed by 1% AHA content, according to Antoniou *et al.* (2010), and with 10% AHA content, all ten to twenty layers can be affected. [29] The acid content dictates the peeling intensity of GA. Be wary of AHA-containing products if you have any of these side effects: redness, swelling, burning, or pruritus. [30] The same holds true for AHA concentrations and UV-induced phototoxicity. According to a 2014 announcement by the Taiwan Ministry of Health and Welfare, chemical peeling agents utilized in hospitals and primary care practices have lower pH values and larger concentrations of alpha hydroxy acids (20–70%). This has raised safety concerns. On the other hand, you should proceed with care while dealing with AHAs because of their potential side effects on the skin's outermost layers, the interplay between concentration and pH, and other factors. [31]

The Safety of AHA

The Krebs cycle and cellular fermentation rely on citric acid, malic acid, and lactic acid. Adenosine 5'-triphosphate (ATP) synthesis and cellular metabolism have been the primary foci of citric acid and malic acid research. The regulation and nature of the epidermis's energy metabolism were documented by Decker in a 1971 review article. [32] The cocoa pod, grape, and blackberry are just a few examples of the many fruits and seeds that contain MA and CA in high concentrations. [33] The biological activities of pure MA and CA have been the subject of relatively few investigations, in contrast to the abundance of research on chemicals found in fruit extracts. When added directly to food for purposes including improving flavor, flavoring, adjuvanting, and adjusting pH, malic acid and citric acid are "generally recognized as safe" according to evidence supplied to the U.S. FDA in 1997 about product formulation (U.S. FDA 1997). Even before then, people were mentioning that CA and MA were used in cosmetics as

humectants (agents that keep the skin moist) and pH adjusters. Clinical trials have shown that MA is irritating, however, the discomfort decreased as the material's pH rose. Their interactions with the skin, particularly the epidermis, could be the source of the disorders. [34]

Conclusion:

Sunlight's ultraviolet B (UVB) rays reach the skin's outermost keratinocytes first and have a greater impact on controlling a number of important cellular reactions, including inflammation, ROS buildup, apoptosis, and DNA fragmentation. As a coordinated system, AHAs at various concentrations have medicinal and aesthetic uses when applied to human skin, where they prevent DNA damage and act as a physical and immunological barrier to potentially dangerous environmental elements. The concentration determines whether AHA is skin-friendly or skin-damaging for humans. Using AHAs as peeling agents at high concentrations might cause skin irritation and damage by disrupting the cohesiveness of the corneocytes in the skin barrier. Contrarily, epigenetic alterations of the inflammasome complex suggest that AHAs, when applied topically at low doses, may have a positive effect on the skin. To rephrase, AHAs do double-duty on the skin. Several characteristics of AHAs are detailed in this article. New methods for protecting against UV-induced diseases may emerge if our findings from animal studies are extrapolated to human populations.

References:

1. Marks R, Leyden JJ. Dermatologic Therapy in Current Practice. London: Martin Dunitz; 2002.
2. William JC. Anti-wrinkle products. In: Barel PM, Paye M, Maibach HI, editors. Handbook of Cosmetic Science and Technology. New York: Marcel Dekker; 2001. p. 543–9.
3. Green B. After 30 years ... the future of hydroxyacids. J Cosmet Dermatol. 2005;4(1):44–5.
4. Moy LS, Murad H, Moy RL. Glycolic acid peels for the treatment of wrinkles and photoaging. J Dermatol Surg Oncol. 1993;19:243–6.
5. Sharad J. Glycolic acid peel therapy—A current review. Clin Cosmet Investig Dermatol. 2013;6:281–8.
6. Ditre CM, Griffin TD, Murphy GF, Sueki H, Telegan B, Johnson WC, *et al.* Effects of alpha-hydroxy acids on photoaged skin: A pilot clinical, histologic, and ultrastructural study. J Am Acad Dermatol. 1996;34(1):187–95.
7. National Toxicology Program. Photocarcinogenesis study of glycolic acid and salicylic acid (CAS Nos. 79-14-1 and 69-72-7) in SKH-1 mice (simulated solar light and topical application study). Natl Toxicol Progr Tech Rep Ser. 2007;524:1–242.
8. Morreale M, Livrea MA. Synergistic effect of glycolic acid on the antioxidant activity of alpha-tocopherol and melatonin in lipid bilayers and in human skin homogenates. Biochem Mol Biol Int. 1997;42:1093–102.

9. Kaidbey K, Sutherland B, Bennett P, Wamer WG, Barton C, Dennis D, *et al.* Topical glycolic acid enhances photodamage by ultraviolet light. Photodermatol Photoimmunol Photomed. 2003;19:21–7.
10. Parker ET, Cleaves HJ 2nd, Bada JL, Fernandez FM. Quantitation of alpha-hydroxy acids in complex prebiotic mixtures via liquid chromatography/tandem mass spectrometry. Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom. 2016;30:2043–51.
11. Van Scott EJ, Yu RJ. Hyperkeratinization, corneocyte cohesion, and alpha hydroxy acids. J Am Acad Dermatol. 1984;11(1):867–79.
12. Gupta RR, Mahajan BB, Garg G. Chemical peeling—Evaluation of glycolic acid in varying concentrations and time intervals. Indian J Dermatol Venereol Leprol. 2001;67:28–9.
13. De Gruijl FR, van Kranen HJ, Mullenders LH. UV-induced DNA damage, repair, mutations and oncogenic pathways in skin cancer. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol. 2001;63:19–27.
14. Kaidbey K, Sutherland B, Bennett P, Wamer WG, Barton C, Dennis D, *et al.* Topical glycolic acid enhances photodamage by ultraviolet light. Photodermatol Photoimmunol Photomed. 2003;19:21–7.
15. Lai WW, Hsiao YP, Chung JG, Wei YH, Cheng YW, Yang JH. Synergistic phototoxic effects of glycolic acid in a human keratinocyte cell line (HaCaT). J Dermatol Sci. 2011;64:191–8.
16. Dahiya A, Romano JF. Cosmeceuticals: A review of their use for aging and photoaged skin. Cosmet Dermatol. 2006;19:479–84.
17. Degitz K, Plewig G. [Adjunctive treatments for acne therapy]. J Dtsch Dermatol Ges. 2005;3:92–6.
18. Behrens-Williams S, Kimmig W, Moll I, Kerscher M. [Cosmetic dermatology in German dermatology departments outcome of a national survey]. J Dtsch Dermatol Ges. 2003;1:910–4.
19. Briden ME. Alpha-hydroxyacid chemical peeling agents: case studies and rationale for safe and effective use. Cutis. 2004;73(2 Suppl):18–24.
20. Saint-Leger D, Leveque JL, Verschoore M. The use of hydroxy acids on the skin: characteristics of C8-lipohydroxy acid. J Cosmet Dermatol. 2007;6:59–65.
21. Ramos-e-Silva M, de Castro MC, da Silva Carneiro SC, Lambert WC. Alpha-hydroxy acids: unapproved uses or indications. Skinmed. 2004;3:141–8.
22. Kessler E, Flanagan K, Chia C, Rogers C, Glaser DA. Comparison of alpha- and beta-hydroxy acid chemical peels in the treatment of mild to moderately severe facial acne vulgaris. Dermatol Surg. 2008;34:45–50.

23. Baldo A, Bezzola P, Curatolo S, Florio T, Lo Guzzo G, Lo Presti M, *et al.* Efficacy of an alpha-hydroxy acid (AHA)-based cream, even in monotherapy, in patients with mild-moderate acne. G Ital Dermatol Venereol. 2010;145:319–22.
24. Abels C, Kaszuba A, Michalak I, Werdier D, Knie U, Kaszuba A. A 10% glycolic acid containing oil-in-water emulsion improves mild acne: a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial. J Cosmet Dermatol. 2011;10:202–9.
25. Newman N, Newman A, Moy LS, Babapour R, Harris AG, Moy RL. Clinical improvement of photoaged skin with 50% glycolic acid. A double-blind vehicle-controlled study. Dermatol Surg. 1996;22:455–60.
26. Elson ML. Treatment of photoaging: A personal comment and open study of the use of glycolic acid. J Dermatolog Treat. 1993;4:215–8.
27. Lask G, Fournier N, Trelles M, Elman M, Scheflan M, Slatkine M, *et al.* The utilization of nonthermal blue (405–425 nm) and near infrared (850–890 nm) light in aesthetic dermatology and surgery—A multicenter study. J Cosmet Laser Ther. 2005;7:163–70.
28. Davidson TM, Wolfe DP. Sunscreens, skin cancer, and your patient. Phys Sportsmed. 1986;14:65–9.
29. Antoniou C, Kosmadaki MG, Stratigos AJ, Katsambas AD. Photoaging: Prevention and topical treatments. Am J Clin Dermatol. 2010;11:95–102.
30. Kurtzweil P. Alpha hydroxy acids for skin care. FDA Consum. 1998;32:30–5.
31. Taiwan Ministry of Health and Welfare. Commercially available alpha-hydroxy acids-containing cosmetic ingredients have complete management practices [Internet]. [cited 2014 Sep 9]. Available from: http://cosmetic-recall.fda.gov.tw
32. Decker RH. Nature and regulation of energy metabolism in the epidermis. J Investig Dermatol. 1971;57:351–63.
33. Falchi M, Bertelli A, Lo Scalzo R, Morassut M, Morelli R, Das S, *et al.* Comparison of cardioprotective abilities between the flesh and skin of grapes. J Agric Food Chem. 2006;54:6613–22.
34. Fiume MM, Heldreth BA, Bergfeld WF, Belsito DV, Hill RA, Klaassen CD, *et al.* Safety assessment of citric acid, inorganic citrate salts, and alkyl citrate esters as used in cosmetics. Int J Toxicol. 2014;33(Suppl 2):16S–46S.

INTEGRATING REAL-WORLD EVIDENCE AND BIG DATA INTO PHARMACY PRACTICE

Dhanya B. Sen*, Ashim Kumar Sen, Rajesh Hadia
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara - 391760, Gujarat
*Corresponding author E-mail: dhanyab1983@gmail.com

Abstract:
In healthcare, big data refers to massive, complex datasets characterized by volume, velocity, and variety, enabling deeper insights that improve patient outcomes and healthcare system efficiency. Real-world data (RWD), collected outside controlled clinical trials, includes sources such as electronic health records (EHRs), insurance claims, patient registries, and digital health tools. Analysis of RWD generates real-world evidence (RWE), which complements traditional clinical trials by reflecting treatment effectiveness and safety in everyday practice. Pharmacy informatics harnesses these data to optimize medication management through electronic prescribing, adherence monitoring, and clinical decision support. Big data and RWE address critical challenges like medication non-adherence by enabling personalized, pharmacist-led interventions supported by digital health technologies such as continuous glucose monitors and digital therapeutics. RWE also strengthens pharmacovigilance by facilitating early detection of adverse drug reactions through advanced analytics and integration of diverse data sources. In pharmaceutical development, RWE supports dose optimization, rare disease studies, and regulatory approvals, accelerated by frameworks such as the 21st Century Cures Act. The incorporation of artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning enhances predictive modeling for personalized therapy management and improves real-time data integration and visualization, advancing pharmacy workflows.
Despite challenges in data quality, interoperability, and governance, ongoing innovations and cross-sector collaboration promise to transform pharmacy practice. By promoting transparency, reproducibility, and economic evaluation, big data and RWE drive a paradigm shift toward precision pharmacy, improved patient outcomes, and more efficient, evidence-based healthcare delivery.

Keywords: Big Data, Real-World Evidence, Pharmacy Practice, Personalized Medicine, Pharmacovigilance, Data Analytics

Introduction:

Definition and Concepts

In the healthcare sector, big data refers to extremely large and intricate datasets that exceed the capabilities of traditional data processing tools. These datasets are typically described by the

"three Vs": volume (the massive amount of data generated), velocity (the rapid rate of data creation and processing), and variety (the wide range of data formats, including structured, semi-structured, and unstructured). Together, these elements empower healthcare professionals—pharmacists included—to extract meaningful insights from complex data, thereby improving patient outcomes and enhancing healthcare system efficiency. Closely associated with big data is real-world data (RWD), which consists of health information collected outside the structured settings of randomized clinical trials. RWD encompasses a range of sources such as electronic health records (EHRs), administrative and insurance claims, patient registries, mobile health applications, and data from wearable health technologies. Through comprehensive analysis of RWD, clinicians can generate real-world evidence (RWE)—valuable clinical insights that reflect how medical treatments perform in everyday practice, including their effectiveness and potential risks. At the convergence of big data and RWE lies the field of pharmacy informatics. This discipline involves the effective application of information technology, data, and clinical knowledge to improve medication-related outcomes. Key areas include electronic prescribing systems, decision support tools, monitoring of medication adherence, and surveillance for adverse drug events. Pharmacy informatics enables pharmacists to harness digital health information to support more accurate, efficient, and safe medication management.[1-3]

Importance of Big Data and RWE in Modern Pharmacy

Medication non-adherence continues to be a significant challenge in healthcare, often resulting in diminished treatment effectiveness, increased healthcare spending, and preventable hospitalizations. The use of big data and RWE offers promising solutions by enabling more precise tracking of adherence patterns and supporting pharmacist-led, data-driven interventions. For instance, analyzing pharmacy dispensing data can help identify non-adherence trends, which can inform the development of personalized strategies to improve patient compliance. This approach enables pharmacists to take on more active, patient-centered roles focused on optimizing therapy and enhancing engagement. With the ongoing transformation of pharmacy practice, RWE is playing a growing role in complementing the findings of randomized controlled trials (RCTs). While RCTs remain the gold standard for internal validity, their applicability to diverse, real-world patient populations is often limited. RWE helps fill this gap by offering insights derived from everyday clinical settings, capturing long-term outcomes and a broader range of patient experiences. Healthcare professionals and regulatory bodies increasingly recognize the value of RWE in guiding benefit-risk assessments, improving clinical guidelines, and supporting evaluations of new health technologies. This empowers pharmacists to make more individualized, evidence-based clinical decisions. This transition is further driven by the adoption of advanced digital data systems, which enhance the quality of clinical decision-making. With access to up-to-date, comprehensive datasets, pharmacists can better assess treatment outcomes and safety—especially in the context of managing chronic diseases. The

combined use of RWE and traditional clinical evidence is enabling more efficient medication management and advancing innovative care models across both community pharmacies and hospital settings.[4-6]

Historical and Regulatory Context

The adoption of RWE by regulatory bodies has advanced significantly, especially after the enactment of the 21st Century Cures Act in 2016. This pivotal legislation formally endorsed the use of RWD and RWE in the processes of drug development and regulatory evaluation, igniting international momentum to integrate these tools—particularly when traditional clinical trial data are insufficient or unavailable. Both the pharmaceutical industry and regulatory authorities are increasingly applying RWE to address essential clinical pharmacology concerns, such as assessing drug-drug interactions, determining optimal dosing in special populations, and facilitating approvals for orphan drugs. Despite this progress, the regulatory use of RWE still faces several obstacles. Persistent issues include concerns over data completeness, representativeness of study populations, and methodological robustness. In some instances, RWE submissions have had limited influence due to missing data, lack of demographic diversity, or vague analytical frameworks. To address these issues, regulatory agencies stress the importance of early engagement and ongoing dialogue with stakeholders to ensure that RWE studies are properly designed and aligned with regulatory expectations. Assessments of RWE are typically conducted on a case-by-case basis, aiming to weigh the benefits of real-world insights against the limitations of observational research and data variability. Comprehensive reviews have indicated that RWE is now being applied more broadly in regulatory contexts, including for initial drug approvals, label modifications, and other evaluation scenarios. However, the methodological consistency and quality of these studies remain uneven. This variability highlights the ongoing need for collaborative, cross-sector initiatives to strengthen data quality standards, refine analytical techniques, and better integrate diverse data sources. These improvements are essential to fully realizing the potential of RWE in regulatory science—supporting faster drug development, enhancing decision-making, and safeguarding patient health.[6-8]

Origins and Categories of Big Data and RWD in Pharmacy

Electronic Health Records (EHRs) and Pharmacy Dispensing Data

Electronic health records (EHRs) provide an extensive and ongoing collection of patient information, including details of clinical visits, diagnoses, lab tests, and medication histories. Within this data, pharmacy dispensing records track medication fills, which serve as indirect measures of medication adherence and persistence. By combining EHR data with dispensing information, healthcare providers can effectively monitor adherence using metrics such as the Proportion of Days Covered (PDC), which measures the percentage of time a patient has access to their prescribed medications during a specified timeframe. Studies using large pharmacy dispensing datasets have shown that pharmacist-led interventions significantly improve

adherence rates. For example, a retrospective study of over 20,000 patients across multiple medication categories found a considerable increase in average PDC following pharmacist interventions, demonstrating the usefulness of dispensing data in reflecting actual medication-taking behavior. However, these improvements tend to decrease over time, highlighting the need for continual monitoring and follow-up. Although EHRs offer important clinical context regarding medication usage, challenges remain due to inconsistent terminology standards and incomplete record-keeping. Variations in data completeness and formatting between healthcare systems make it difficult to seamlessly merge EHR data. Still, large integrated datasets combining pharmacy and clinical information tend to accurately represent population demographics and are widely used for epidemiological and medication usage research, confirming their vital role in pharmacy analytics. The increasing availability of sophisticated computational tools and programming languages has enabled pharmacists and researchers to efficiently extract, process, and visualize large datasets for adherence and outcome analysis. This advancement has led to the creation of more interactive, real-time adherence monitoring systems that integrate smoothly with pharmacy workflows and promote ongoing quality improvement initiatives.[4,9,10]

Claims, Registries, and Patient Generated Data

Insurance claims data provide an important resource for analyzing patterns of healthcare use, medication consumption, and financial outcomes on a broad scale. While these datasets are primarily intended for billing and cost control, they also enable long-term monitoring of patients' medication exposure and adherence to treatment. Alongside claims data and electronic health records (EHRs), disease- and treatment-specific registries offer more detailed clinical insights. The integration of these varied data sources strengthens pharmacoepidemiological studies and outcomes research, aiding both clinical decisions and health policy formulation. New sources of RWD, such as patient-reported outcomes and data from mobile health apps, capture real-time medication adherence, symptom monitoring, and lifestyle factors that traditional health databases often miss. Nevertheless, there remain significant gaps in consistently recording and integrating over-the-counter and nonprescription medication use within claims and EHR systems, limiting the creation of comprehensive medication profiles outside formal healthcare settings. Further complications in RWE research include methodological challenges like recall bias in surveys and incomplete medication exposure documentation in claims data. Overcoming these obstacles requires innovative approaches, data standardization, and the application of emerging technologies like smartphone apps and artificial intelligence to improve data collection and validate the safety and effectiveness of non-prescription products. The Australian healthcare system exemplifies ongoing challenges with data linkage and governance that impact the reliability of RWE derived from combined claims, registries, and EHR sources. To address these issues, strategic plans have been proposed to enhance coordinated access to linked medication

data, facilitating high-quality pharmacoepidemiological research that supports assessments of medication safety and effectiveness at the population level.[2,11,12]

Emerging Data Sources: Genomics and Digital Therapeutics

Integrating omics data—including genomics, metabolomics, transcriptomics, and proteomics—into pharmaceutical sciences represents a major leap forward in personalized medicine and drug development. Pharmacogenomics, in particular, allows for more precise predictions of how patients will respond to drugs and their risk of side effects, enabling more customized treatment plans and expanding targeted therapy options. However, handling and accessing these complex datasets pose significant challenges, especially regarding data privacy, the need for standardized methods, and ensuring compatibility across different platforms. Digital therapeutics (DTx), which are software-driven interventions based on evidence-backed behavioral therapies, generate continuous patient-level data during use. This data is highly valuable for monitoring medication adherence, promoting behavioral changes, and improving health outcomes. Developing an integrated real-world evidence framework for DTx requires a stepwise, milestone-driven process that incorporates real-world data throughout the product's lifecycle—from identifying unmet medical needs to ongoing monitoring and effectiveness assessment. Artificial intelligence, fueled by big data analytics, enables advanced modeling techniques necessary for analyzing vast molecular and clinical datasets, supporting drug discovery, optimization, and post-market surveillance. However, the potential of these technologies must be balanced with concerns over data quality, model transparency, and regulatory compliance to ensure their safe and reliable adoption in everyday clinical practice.[10,13,14]

Applications of Big Data and RWE in Pharmacy Practice

Optimizing Drug Adherence and Ongoing Disease Control

Medication adherence is a fundamental element in effectively managing chronic diseases. Interventions led by pharmacists that leverage dispensing data have shown clear improvements in adherence rates. For instance, community pharmacy programs analyzed using big data methods have documented notable increases in proportion of days covered (PDC) among patients taking medications for chronic illnesses like hyperlipidemia, hypertension, and depression. While these gains are generally sustained in the short term, adherence tends to wane over longer periods without continuous support, highlighting the need for ongoing adherence efforts. Digital health technologies—such as continuous glucose monitors and prescription digital therapeutics—offer ways to objectively track adherence and provide immediate feedback to both patients and healthcare providers. In large insured populations, continuous glucose monitoring has been associated with better glycemic control and decreased acute care use, illustrating the positive effects of big data-driven tools on chronic disease management. For individuals with chronic mental health conditions like schizophrenia, the use of long-acting injectable antipsychotics has led to enhanced adherence and fewer hospitalizations,

demonstrating how real-world evidence from extensive pharmacoepidemiologic research can help optimize treatments for improved patient outcomes and reduced healthcare costs.[4,15,16]

Improving Drug Safety Surveillance and Adverse Event Tracking

Pharmacovigilance focuses on ensuring medication safety post-market by identifying and addressing adverse drug reactions (ADRs). Real-world evidence is vital in this effort, supplementing traditional spontaneous reports and clinical trial findings by reflecting how drugs affect diverse populations in everyday healthcare settings. Large-scale data sources like patient registries, insurance claims, and electronic health records enable the detection of rare or long-delayed safety concerns that might otherwise be missed. There is a growing emphasis globally on integrating big data to support proactive risk management and more tailored pharmacovigilance strategies. For instance, Israel's National Pharmacovigilance System combines data from health maintenance organizations with artificial intelligence to spot safety signals and analyze epidemiological data, facilitating the advancement of personalized medicine and improving drug safety profiles. Furthermore, the use of evidence-based pharmacy practices has enhanced drug safety assessments by employing advanced analytical techniques and combining multiple data types for comprehensive monitoring of adverse effects. These approaches allow for earlier identification of potential safety issues and more effective mitigation, leading to safer use of medications across populations.[17-19]

Enhancing Pharmaceutical Development and Regulatory Processes

The incorporation of RWE into drug development is transforming regulatory processes. RWE helps answer important clinical pharmacology questions, including optimizing doses for specific populations, designing pediatric studies, and evaluating rare diseases—areas where traditional clinical trials often struggle due to limited sample sizes and feasibility issues. Additionally, synthetic and external control groups derived from RWD offer valuable support for single-arm trials, accelerating regulatory approvals and reducing dependence on expensive randomized controlled trials. Regulatory bodies are increasingly accepting RWE in new drug applications, label expansions, and post-marketing surveillance. However, its effective use requires carefully designed studies that address bias, data integrity, and appropriate analytical approaches. Early dialogue between regulators and drug sponsors is crucial to generating fit-for-purpose RWE that meets rigorous standards for accuracy and reliability. Managed care pharmacy stakeholders have advocated for better benefit designs and the use of RWE to speed up drug approvals, underscoring the importance of real-world clinical and economic outcome data. These trends highlight the growing integration of RWE across the drug development lifecycle to enhance therapeutic outcomes and support health equity.[7,8,20]

Digital Technologies and Evaluation Techniques

Big Data Processing and Artificial Intelligence in Drug Development

Pharmacy practice is progressively adopting big data analytics and machine learning techniques to predict how patients will respond, refine treatment strategies, and support proactive medication management. Predictive modeling identifies individuals at risk for non-adherence, adverse drug events, or ineffective outcomes, enabling targeted interventions. Artificial intelligence methods, including convolutional neural networks, have been applied in drug demand forecasting, economic decision-making, and therapy assessment, demonstrating considerable potential to improve decision accuracy and efficiency. Despite these advancements, barriers such as fragmented data, poor system interoperability, and the complexity of interpreting AI models limit broader implementation. Addressing these challenges requires collaboration across disciplines, development of standardized data systems, and enhanced AI transparency to build confidence in clinical environments. Recent studies emphasize how integrating machine learning with big data is revolutionizing pharmacy by advancing personalized medicine through better prediction of drug interactions, early detection of adverse effects, and dynamic therapy management.[14,21,22]

Real-Time Data Integration and Visualization

Pharmacies utilize real-time monitoring systems that integrate multiple data sources to provide immediate feedback on medication adherence and assist in clinical decision-making. Frameworks like TOGAF ADM, often used in public health, facilitate streamlined data collection, integration, and visualization. These enterprise architectures help overcome issues related to fragmented software, complex data governance, and lack of standardized protocols. Pharmacy practices have improved through technologies such as automated dispensing cabinets, barcode medication administration, and smart dispensing counters, which reduce medication errors and boost operational efficiency. Visual dashboards that consolidate adherence metrics, safety alerts, and patient outcomes empower pharmacists to make well-informed decisions and enhance patient safety effectively. Additionally, analytical platforms that combine dispensing data with clinical information provide a comprehensive understanding of medication use, treatment trends, and adherence patterns, aiding quality improvement initiatives and policy development.[4,23,24]

Computational Reproducibility and Research Transparency

Ensuring reproducibility and transparency in big data research is critical in pharmaceutical sciences to confirm results and uphold scientific integrity. The sharing of datasets, analysis scripts, and standardized reporting practices helps minimize methodological bias, prevent selective reporting, and speed up drug discovery. Failures in research reproducibility often arise from the lack of detailed protocols and restricted access to raw data—problems that can be addressed through collaborative platforms and open science initiatives. In retrospective clinical

pharmacy studies, inconsistencies in terminology and data collection methods can cause bias and hinder the synthesis of findings. Encouraging the use of standardized vocabularies and clear methodological reporting enhances the reliability and practical relevance of RWE research. Additionally, reproducible computational workflows that utilize publicly accessible datasets allow researchers to verify and extend previous work, accelerating drug development and fostering therapeutic innovation by increasing trust in analytic outcomes.[10,19]

Impact on Pharmacy Workflow and Clinical Practice

Integration into Community Pharmacy Services

Community pharmacies are utilizing dispensing data and real-world evidence to create tailored medication adherence programs, improve chronic disease management, and support public health efforts. Pharmacists, as accessible healthcare professionals and primary patient contacts, enhance their roles through data-driven insights that inform personalized counseling and follow-up care. The COVID-19 pandemic highlighted the critical role of community pharmacists beyond medication dispensing, including the management and allocation of personal protective equipment. In Taiwan, community pharmacies connected to national health information systems enabled real-time monitoring of mask supplies, ensuring fair distribution. This coordinated approach showcased innovative applications of healthcare data analytics in emergency public health responses. Additionally, digital health tools such as mobile applications, chatbots, and online platforms have been increasingly adopted in community pharmacy environments to promote medication adherence, deliver trustworthy information, and reduce infection risks during the pandemic. These technologies illustrate the expanding capabilities of pharmacy services driven by big data analytics.[4,25,26]

Hospital Pharmacy and Medication Safety

Hospital pharmacies have integrated advanced medication technologies to improve patient safety and increase workflow efficiency. Technologies such as automated dispensing cabinets (ADCs), barcode medication administration (BCMA), and smart dispensing counters (SDCs) have collectively contributed to significant reductions in medication dispensing errors. Studies conducted at academic medical centers reveal marked decreases in overall error rates after successive implementations of these technologies, particularly reducing common errors like incorrect drug dispensing. Beyond minimizing errors, these tools enhance medication management processes, freeing pharmacists to dedicate more time to clinical care. Real-world evidence studies validate the positive impact of these technologies, highlighting their crucial role in promoting medication safety in complex hospital pharmacy environments.[19,24]

Clinical Decision Support and Personalized Medicine

The integration of RWD with pharmacogenomics has paved the way for more precise and individualized treatment strategies in a range of clinical settings. For example, in multiple sclerosis care, real-world evidence shows a growing preference for initiating highly effective

therapies early, reflecting shifts in prescribing habits influenced by clinical guidelines and big data insights. Leveraging extensive datasets in pharmaceutical research enables the discovery of biomarkers and distinct patient populations, which helps tailor treatment decisions, minimize adverse effects, and boost therapeutic outcomes. Combining genetic information with clinical data facilitates the move away from standardized treatments toward customized therapies guided by predictive analytics. For pharmacists, adopting these data-driven approaches is essential to stay current in medication management and to promote the use of innovative, personalized therapies that enhance patient care.[10,26,27]

Economic and Policy Implications

Cost-Effectiveness and Health Resource Utilization

Real-world evidence is playing an increasingly important role in evaluating cost-effectiveness and the use of healthcare resources. For instance, better medication adherence and adoption of long-acting therapies have been associated with reduced hospital admissions and emergency department visits, leading to considerable savings for healthcare systems. The integration of big data and artificial intelligence tools enhances health economic decision-making by forecasting drug demand, economic burdens, and the financial effects of treatment adherence. Medicaid and managed care organizations have utilized the expanded responsibilities of pharmacists, backed by real-world evidence, to improve medication management and decrease unnecessary healthcare expenses. The combination of clinical results and economic information supports the development of policies focused on value-based care, highlighting the essential contribution of RWE in achieving both clinical effectiveness and cost containment in healthcare.[22,28,29]

Reimbursement and Payer Perspectives on RWE

Payers are progressively integrating real-world evidence into decisions about formularies and coverage; however, its application mainly focuses on monitoring disease progression and healthcare usage rather than thorough evaluations of clinical effectiveness or adverse events. Retrospective cohort studies and registry data are commonly used in economic assessments, though challenges with data completeness and relevance persist. While RWE is frequently included in pharmaceutical economic analyses, gaps remain in capturing direct effectiveness outcomes and detailed adverse event data, which limits payers' capacity to fully utilize these insights for patient-centered decision-making. There is a strong push to improve the quality and availability of RWE to enhance value-based formulary design and reimbursement frameworks.[30,31]

Regulatory Frameworks and Future Directions

Regulatory authorities emphasize the need for early engagement with sponsors and stakeholders to ensure that RWE is generated appropriately, with well-designed studies, relevant data sources, and thorough analysis to support regulatory approval. Key challenges such as privacy concerns, data governance, and inconsistent methodologies underscore the necessity for standardized

frameworks and national capabilities for effective RWE generation. Experts have outlined strategic roadmaps advocating for easier data access, clear regulatory policies, and robust infrastructure to fully leverage RWE in drug development and lifecycle management. Going forward, these frameworks should focus on interoperability, transparency, stakeholder collaboration, and sophisticated analytical tools to optimize the development and approval of medicines using real-world insights.[8,12]

Conclusion:

Big data and RWE are reshaping pharmacy practice by enabling more precise, data-driven, and patient-centered care. Through the integration of diverse data sources—ranging from electronic health records and insurance claims to digital health technologies—pharmacists can improve medication adherence, enhance drug safety, and support personalized treatment strategies. Pharmacy informatics, powered by artificial intelligence and machine learning, facilitates real-time decision-making and proactive patient management. Although challenges such as data quality, system interoperability, and ethical governance persist, continued innovation and collaboration across healthcare sectors are essential to overcoming these barriers. Ultimately, big data and RWE represent powerful tools in advancing precision pharmacy, promoting transparency and reproducibility, and delivering more efficient, cost-effective, and outcome-driven healthcare.

References:

1. Ma CSJ, Smith HW, Chu C, Jurez D. Big data in pharmacy practice: current use, challenges, and the future. Integr Pharm Res Pract. 2015.
2. Dang A. Real-world evidence: a primer. Pharm Med. 2023.
3. Stokes LB, Rogers J, Hertig JB, Weber RJ. Big data: implications for health system pharmacy. Hosp Pharm. 2016;51(7):599–606.
4. Torres-Robles A, Wiecek E, Cutler R, Drake B, Benrimoj S, Fernandez-Llimos F, *et al.* Using dispensing data to evaluate adherence implementation rates in community pharmacy. Front Pharmacol. 2019;10:130.
5. Klonoff DC, Gutierrez A, Fleming A, Kerr D. Real-world evidence should be used in regulatory decisions about new pharmaceutical and medical device products for diabetes. J Diabetes Sci Technol. 2019;13(6):981–5.
6. Bakker E, Plueschke K, Jonker C, Kurz X, Starokozhko V, Mol P. Contribution of real-world evidence in European Medicines Agency's regulatory decision making. Clin Pharmacol Ther. 2022;111(2):288–300.
7. Zhu R, Vora B, Menon S, Younis I, Dwivedi G, Meng Z, *et al.* Clinical pharmacology applications of real-world data and real-world evidence in drug development and approval: an industry perspective. Clin Pharmacol Ther. 2023.

8. Alipour-Haris G, Liu X, Acha V, Winterstein A, Burcu M. Real-world evidence to support regulatory submissions: a landscape review and assessment of use cases. Clin Transl Sci. 2024.
9. Boikos C, Imran M, Lusignan SD, Ortiz JR, Patriarca P, Mansi JA. Integrating electronic medical records and claims data for influenza vaccine research. Vaccines. 2022;10(5):727.
10. Peng K, Huang YN, Sarwal V, Alachkar H, Wong-Beringer A, Mangul S. Integrating big data computational skills in education to facilitate reproducibility and transparency in pharmaceutical sciences. J Am Coll Clin Pharm. 2021;4(12):1543–51.
11. Maihfner C, Mallick-Searle T, Vollert J, Kalita P, Sethi VS. Review of challenges in performing real-world evidence studies for nonprescription products. Pragmat Obs Res. 2025;16:67–76.
12. Pearson S, Pratt N, Costa JDO, Zoega H, Laba T, Etherton-Beer C, *et al.* Generating real-world evidence on the quality use, benefits and safety of medicines in Australia: history, challenges and a roadmap for the future. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2021;18(24):13345.
13. Kim M, Patrick K, Nebeker C, Godino J, Stein S, Klasnja P, *et al.* The digital therapeutics real world evidence framework: an approach for guiding evidence-based DTx design, development, testing, and monitoring. OSF Preprints. 2022.
14. Ashiwaju B, Orikpete O, Uzougbo C. The intersection of artificial intelligence and big data in drug discovery: a review of current trends and future implications. Matrix Sci Pharma. 2023;7(2):54–9.
15. Norman G, Fernandes J, Nemlekar PM, Andrade SB, Lupton LL, Berk A. Initiating continuous glucose monitoring is associated with improvements in glycemic control and reduced health care resource utilization for people with diabetes in a large US-insured population: a real-world evidence study. J Manag Care Spec Pharm. 2024.
16. Lin D, Thompson-Leduc P, Ghelerter I, Nguyen HN, Lafeuille M, Benson C, *et al.* Real-world evidence of the clinical and economic impact of long-acting injectable versus oral antipsychotics among patients with schizophrenia in the United States: a systematic review and meta-analysis. CNS Drugs. 2021;35(6):569–86.
17. Raysahab PA, Dubey D, Marchande S, Gaikwad VS, Gadhave NS. The significance of real-world evidence in pharmacovigilance: enhancing the drug safety monitoring. Int J Pharm Res Appl. 2024;9(5):8368–39.
18. Fermont I. Pharmacovigilance strategy: opportunities for cross-national learning. Isr J Health Policy Res. 2019;8(1):15.
19. Hasyim DM, Rastiti L. Evidence-based pharmacy: integration of data and research in the development of more effective and safer drugs. J Pharmacopoeia. 2024;3(1):33–40.

20. Brixner D, Couto JL, Worley K, Small A, Panchal RM, Dharbhamalla V, *et al.* Advancing a managed care pharmacy research agenda: generating real-world evidence to support US Food and Drug Administration accelerated approvals and improving benefit design to address health inequities. J Manag Care Spec Pharm. 2022;28(5):557–63.
21. Haval DAM, Afzal M. Big data in pharmacy: transforming patient care with analytics. Commun Appl Nonlinear Anal. 2024;32(1):1–9.
22. Yuan J. An economic decision-making model for drugs using big data and convolution neural network in healthcare. Mob Inf Syst. 2022;2022:1–10.
23. Designing enterprise architecture toward big data readiness using TOGAF ADM in the public health sector. Int J Emerg Trends Eng Res. 2022;10(10):268–73.
24. Yu W, Cheng Y, Hou Y, Hsieh Y. Implementation of medication-related technology and its impact on pharmacy workflow: real-world evidence usability study. J Med Internet Res. 2024;26:e59220.
25. Ou H, Yang YK. Community pharmacists in Taiwan at the frontline against the novel coronavirus pandemic: gatekeepers for the rationing of personal protective equipment. Ann Intern Med. 2020;173(2):149–50.
26. Bond C. My crystal ball. Int J Pharm Pract. 2020;28(1):1.
27. Papukchieva S, Stratil A, Kahn M, Ness N, Hollnagel-Schmitz M, Gerencser V, *et al.* Shifting from the treat-to-target to the early highly effective treatment approach in patients with multiple sclerosis: real-world evidence from Germany. Ther Adv Neurol Disord. 2024;17:1–13.
28. Velez F, Colman S, Kauffman L, Ruetsch C, Anastassopoulos K. Real-world reduction in healthcare resource utilization following treatment of opioid use disorder with reSET-O, a novel prescription digital therapeutic. Expert Rev Pharmacoecon Outcomes Res. 2020;21(4):603–10.
29. Urick B, Brown P, Easter JC. Achieving better quality and lower costs in Medicaid through enhanced pharmacy services. N C Med J. 2017;78(3):188–91.
30. Hurwitz JT, Brown M, Graff JS, Peters L, Malone DC. Is real-world evidence used in P&T monographs and therapeutic class reviews? J Manag Care Spec Pharm. 2017;23(3):275–81.
31. Lee W, Dayer V, Jiao B, Carlson JJ, Devine B, Veenstra DL. Use of real-world evidence in economic assessments of pharmaceuticals in the United States. J Manag Care Spec Pharm. 2020;27(1):5–13.

Progressive Trends in Pharmaceutical, Chemical and Biological Sciences Volume III
ISBN: 978-81-989981-7-0

About Editors

Dr. Varunsingh Saggu is currently employed as an Assistant Professor and Clinical Preceptor at Department of Pharmacy Practice, Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara-391760, Gujarat, India. He is providing hands-on training to PharmD students, mainly devising specific medication plans that are individualized for patients and assisting physicians and other health care professionals to make drug-based decisions at Dhiraj General Hospital. Dr. Varunsingh Saggu has completed his Doctor of Pharmacy (Pharm D) from Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Gujarat, India, (2013) batch. Dr. Varunsingh Saggu has more than 5 years of Experience in the teaching field and 2 year of experience in a Hospital as a Clinical Pharmacologist. He has published more than 10 research, review, and case reports and published more than 20 book chapters. His research interests are Pharmacovigilance, clinical research, therapeutic drug monitoring, and Antibiotic Stewardship Program.

Dr. Venugopal T.M is a Lecturer in the Department of Microbiology at Sahyadri Science College, Shivamogga, Karnataka, India. Born into a middle-class family, he holds a Master's degree in Microbiology and a Ph.D. from Kuvempu University. With 15 years of research and 12 years of academic experience, his expertise lies in Medical Microbiology, particularly bacteriology and mycology. His research interests include infectious diseases, antimicrobial resistance, and the use of natural products to reverse drug resistance in infectious pathogens. Dr. Venugopal's work primarily focuses on the isolation and identification of pathogens. He has published 20 research articles and edited 3 books in national and international journals. He continues to contribute significantly to biological research and education.

Dr. Swaminath L. Bhattar is an Associate Professor in the Department of Chemistry at Gogate Jogalekar College, Ratnagiri (Autonomous), Maharashtra. He is a highly accomplished academic professional with extensive experience in B.Sc. student education, research mentorship, and curriculum development. He has a proven ability to design and implement effective learning methodologies, fostering collaborative research and ensuring student progression. Alongside his teaching and research commitments, Dr. Bhattar is actively involved in NCC leadership and various social initiatives. He has a notable research career with over 25 publications in national and international journals and possesses expertise in sophisticated scientific instrumentation. His dedication to education, research, and societal contribution reflects his commitment to holistic academic development and leadership.

Dr. Nanjala Rajkumar is Associate Professor of Zoology and Vice Principal at Government Degree College, Badangpet, Telangana, since August 2024. He holds an M.Sc. in Zoology, Ph.D., Advanced Diploma in Bioinformatics (ADBI), and has qualified SET from Osmania University. With over 27 years of teaching experience, including 14 years in Government service and 13 years in reputed institutions like Nizam College and University College of Science, he is a seasoned academician. Dr. Rajkumar has published seven research papers in national and international journals and authored two books. He is an active Board of Studies member in several institutions. He has guided award-winning student projects, securing State-Level Jignasa recognition, and delivered live classes on the T-SAT Network under CCE-sponsored programs, reflecting his dedication to teaching and research excellence.

Bhumi Publishing

ISBN 978-81-989981-7-0
9 788198 998170